



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Educ T918.78.445

CLASSICAL WORKS.

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY



THE ESSEX INSTITUTE
TEXT-BOOK COLLECTION

GIFT OF
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON
OF NEW YORK

JANUARY 25, 1924

City of New York. 12mo. 400 pages.
Cicero de Officiis. With English Notes, mostly translated from
Zump and Bonnell. By THOMAS A. TEACHER, of Yale College.
12mo. 194 pages.

Elementary
Language.

Revised

ms, Notes,

dition, for
intended
Part
to Idioms

War, with
ans of Bat-

al Gram-
D. 12mo.

Composi-
D. 12mo.

Imitative
erson, Pro-
dition, en-
Index, etc.

291 pages.

English
phical and
COER, D. D.

Schools and
the Univer.

3 2044 097 055 685

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

Horace, The Works of. With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. LINCOLN, Professor of Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 575 pages.

Livy. Selections from the first five books, together with the twenty-first and twenty-second books entire. With a Plan of Rome, and a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Prof. of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 329 pages.

Quintus Curtius: Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and illustrated with English Notes, by WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo. 385 pages.

Sallust's Jugurtha and Catilina. With Notes and a Vocabulary. By BUTLER and STURGEON. 12mo. 397 pages.

It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition heretofore published in this country.

The Histories of Tacitus. With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of Latin and Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 453 pages.

Tacitus's Germania and Agricola. With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER. 12mo. 193 pages.

Virgil's Æneid.* With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY FRISVOLD, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. (Recently published.) 12mo. 598 pages.

The type is unusually large and distinct. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, customs, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients, with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations.

GREEK TEXT-BOOKS.

A First Greek Book* and Introductory Reader. By A. HARKNESS, Ph.D., author of "Arnold's First Latin Book." "Second Latin Book," etc. (Recently published.) 12mo. 276 pages.

Acts of the Apostles, according to the text of AUGUSTUS HAHN. With Notes and a Lexicon by JOHN J. OWEN, D.D., LL.D. With Map. 12mo.

Arnold's First Greek Book,* on the Plan of the First Latin Book. 12mo. 297 pages.

Arnold's Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.* 12mo. 297 pages.

— Second Part to the above.* 12mo. 248 pages.

SEE END OF THIS VOLUME.

1. Homine milite forte
vrb servabunt

~~Homine milite forte~~

~~Homine milite forte~~

~~Homine milite forte~~

2. milite fortes vrbem
pulchram servabunt

3. vrbis nobilis servabitur

4. Pueri bone laudabuntur

5. Pueri boni laudabuntur

6. Homine discipulo diligente
laudatus

7. Discipuli diligentes

~~laudabuntur~~

8. Viri milites fortes laudantur

26. Viri milites fortes

Miss L. Garbner
No 24 Chestnut St
Salem
Mass
1879
Dec 8th

11 20

1. Arce cantatant -
 2. Homme Arce Amatic
 3. Arce Amannus
 4. Hala aris Br latal -
 5. Homme Virle serrabat in
 6. Milleles Irtem serrabat in
 7. Pastres montis amant
 8. Virtutem Amannus
 9. Homme virtus Amant
 10. Amant
 11. Homme cives regem latalant
 12. Regem latalant
 13. Regem latalant
 14. Virtus Regem latalant
- Amant Regem latalant

AN
INTRODUCTORY
LATIN BOOK,

INTENDED AS AN
ELEMENTARY DRILL-BOOK,
ON THE
INFLECTIONS AND PRINCIPLES OF THE LANGUAGE,

AND AS AN
INTRODUCTION
TO THE
AUTHOR'S GRAMMAR, READER AND LATIN COMPOSITION.

BY
ALBERT HARKNESS.

Revised Edition,
ADAPTED TO THE REVISED GRAMMAR.

NEW YORK:
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,
549 & 551 BROADWAY.
1878.

Educ; T 918.78.445

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF
GEORGE ARTHUR ELLIPTON
JANUARY 25, 1924

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1886, by
ALBERT HARKNESS,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Rhode Island.

P R E F A C E.

THE volume now offered to the public is intended to furnish the pupil his first lessons in Latin. As an Elementary Drill-book, it aims to supply a want long felt in our schools. In no stage of a course of classical study is judicious instruction of more vital importance than in that which deals with the forms and elements of the Latin language. To the beginner, every thing is new, and requires minute and careful illustration. He must at the very outset become so familiar with all the grammatical inflections, with their exact form and force, that he will recognize them with promptness and certainty wherever they occur. He must not lose time in uncertain conjecture, where positive knowledge alone will be of any real value. Improvement on this point is one of the pressing needs of our schools. This volume is intended as a contribution to classical education in aid of this particular work. It aims to lighten the burden of the teacher in elementary drill, and to aid him in grounding his pupils in the first elements of the Latin language.

It is the unmistakable verdict of the class-room, that theory and practice must not be separated in the study of language. The true method of instruction will make ample provision for both. On the one hand, the pupil must, by a vigorous use of the memory, become master of all the grammatical forms and rules; while, on the other hand, he must not be denied the luxury of using the knowledge which he is so laboriously acquiring.

To this just and urgent demand of the class-room, the

author's First Latin Book, published fifteen years since, on the basis of Dr. Arnold's works, owed its origin. For the favor with which it was received, and for the generous interest with which it has so long been regarded, the author desires here to express his sincere thanks to the numerous classical instructors whose fidelity in its use has contributed so largely to its success. In the conviction, however, that it has now done its appointed work, he begs leave to offer them the present volume as its successor.

The great objection to most First Latin Books, that, however excellent they may be in themselves, they are not especially adapted to any particular Grammar, and that they accordingly fill the memory of the pupil with rules and statements which must, as far as possible, be unlearned as soon as he passes to his Grammar, is entirely obviated in this volume. All the grammatical portions of it, even to the numbering of the articles, are introduced in the exact form and language of the author's Grammar. Indeed, the paradigms are not only the same as in the Grammar, but also occupy the same place on the page; so that even the local associations which the beginner so readily forms with the pages of his first book may be transferred directly to the Grammar.

This work is intended to be complete in itself. It comprises a distinct outline of Latin Grammar, Exercises for Double Translation, Suggestions to the Learner, Notes and Vocabularies. As an Introduction to the author's Grammar, Reader and Latin Composition, it discusses and illustrates precisely those points which are deemed most essential as a preparation for the course of study presented in those works.

CONTENTS.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page.
Alphabet	1
Sounds of Letters	2
Exercise I.	3
" II.	4
" III.	5
Syllables	6
Quantity	6
Accentuation	7
Exercise IV.	7

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

Gender	8
Person and Number	9
Cases	9
Declensions	10
First Declension	11
Exercise V.	11
Second Declension	13
Exercise VI.	14
" VII.	16
Third Declension	17
Exercise VIII.	23
" IX.	25
Fourth Declension	26
Exercise X.	27

	Page.
Fifth Declension	28
Exercise XI.	29

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions	30
Exercise XII.	33
Third Declension	35
Exercise XIII.	37
Comparison of Adjectives	38
Exercise XIV.	39
Numeral Adjectives	40
Exercise XV.	42

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns	43
Possessive	44
Demonstrative	44
Relative	45
Interrogative	46
Indefinite	46
Exercise XVI.	47

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

Voices	48
Moods	49
Tenses	50
Numbers	50
Persons	51
Conjugation	51
The Verb Sum	52
Exercise XVII.	56
" XVIII.	57
" XIX.	60
First Conjugation	62
Exercise XX.	66

CONTENTS.

vii

	Page.
Exercise XXI.	67
“ XXII.	69
“ XXIII.	71
“ XXIV.	73
“ XXV.	74
“ XXVI.	75
“ XXVII.	76
Second Conjugation	78
Exercise XXVIII.	82
“ XXIX.	83
“ XXX.	84
“ XXXI.	85
“ XXXII.	86
“ XXXIII.	87
“ XXXIV.	88
Third Conjugation	90
Exercise XXXV.	94
“ XXXVI.	95
“ XXXVII.	96
“ XXXVIII.	97
“ XXXIX.	97
“ XL.	98
“ XLI.	99
Fourth Conjugation	100
Exercise XLII.	104
“ XLIII.	104
“ XLIV.	105
“ XLV.	106
“ XLVI.	107
“ XLVII.	107
“ XLVIII.	108
Verbs in 10	110
Exercise XLIX.	112

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

Section.	
I. Classification of Sentences	114
II. Simple Sentences	115

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

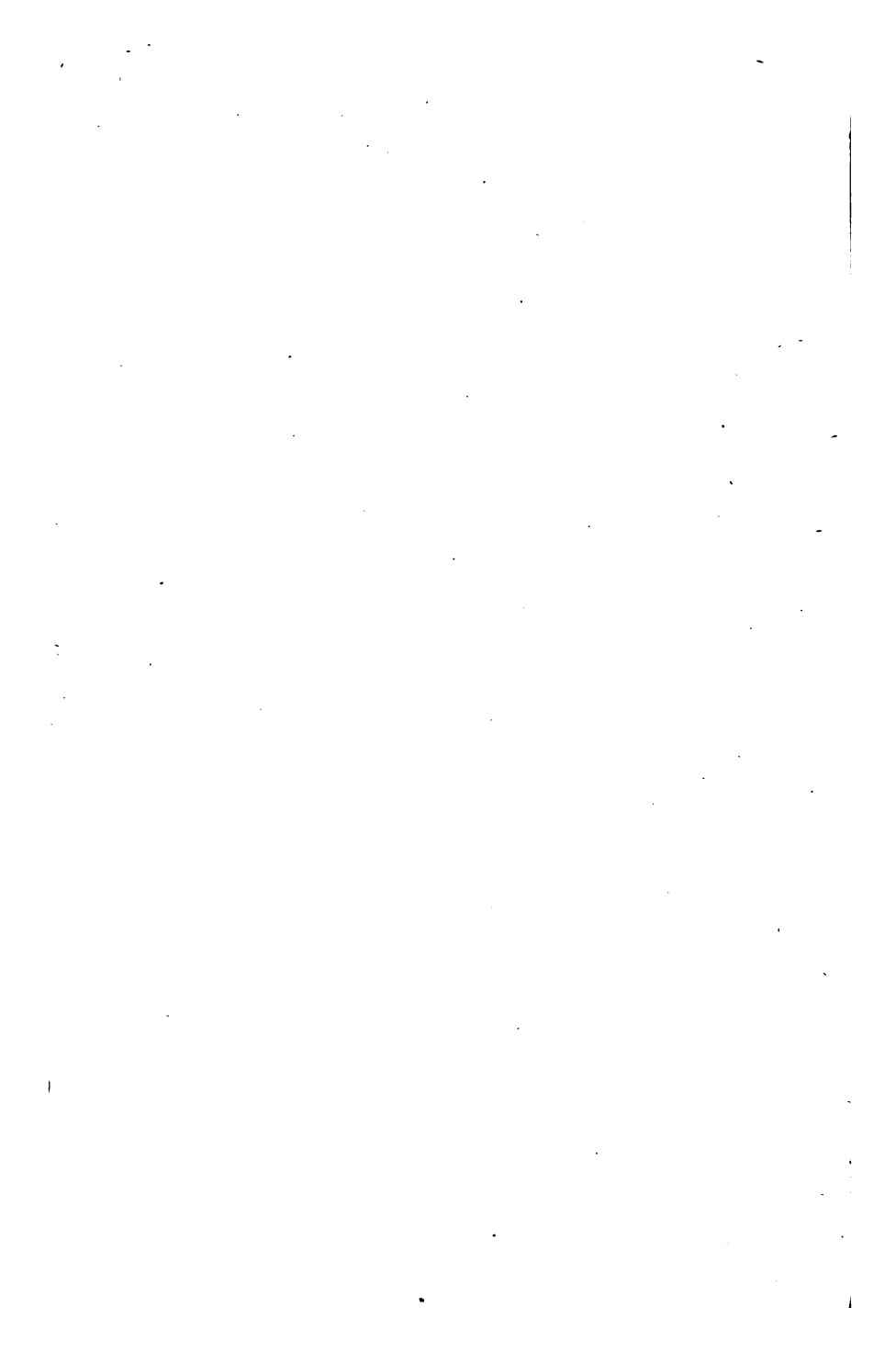
Section.		Page.
I.	Agreement of Nouns	117
	Exercise L.	117
	“ LI.	119
II.	Nominative	120
	Exercise LII.	120
III.	Vocative	121
	Exercise LIII.	121
IV.	Accusative	122
	Exercise LIV.	123
	“ LV.	124
	“ LVI.	125
V.	Dative	126
	Exercise LVII.	127
	“ LVIII.	129
VI.	Genitive	130
	Exercise LIX.	131
	“ LX.	132
VII.	Ablative	133
	Exercise LXI.	135
	“ LXII.	137
	“ LXIII.	138
	“ LXIV.	140
VIII.	Cases with Prepositions	141
	Exercise LXV.	142
	Suggestions to the Learner	143
	Latin-English Vocabulary	147
	English-Latin Vocabulary	157

EXPLANATION OF REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS.

THE numerals refer to articles in this work.

The following abbreviations occur:

abl.	ablative.	n.	neuter.
acc.	accusative.	nom.	nominative.
act.	active.	p.	page.
adv.	adverb.	part.	particle.
conj.	conjunction.	pass.	passive.
dat.	dative.	pers.	person.
f.	feminine.	plur., or pl.	plural.
gen.	genitive.	prep.	preposition.
indef.	indefinite.	rel.	relative.
interrog.	interrogative.	sing.	singular.
m.	masculine.	voc.	vocative.



INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK.

1. LATIN GRAMMAR treats of the principles of the Latin language.

PART FIRST. ORTHOGRAPHY.¹

ALPHABET.

2. THE Latin alphabet is the same as the English, with the omission of *w*.

3. CLASSES OF LETTERS. — Letters are divided into two classes: —

I. VOWELS a, e, i, o, u, y.

II. CONSONANTS:—

1. *Liquids* l, m, n, r.
2. *Spirants* h, f, v, j, s.
3. *Mutes*: 1) Labials — *lip-letters* . . . b, p, f, v.
 2) Dentals — *teeth-letters* . . . d, t.
 3) Gutturals — *throat-letters* . . c, g, k, q, h.
4. *Double Consonants* x, z.

4. COMBINATIONS OF LETTERS. — We notice here,

1. *Diphthongs*, — combinations of two vowels in one syllable. The most common are *ae*, *oe*, *au*.

2. *Double Consonants*, — *x* = *cs* or *gs*; *z* = *ds* or *sd*.

3. *Ch*, *ph*, *th*, are best treated, not as combinations of letters, but only as aspirated forms of *c*, *p*, and *t*, as *h* is only a breathing.

¹ Orthography treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

5. PRONUNCIATION. — Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, three distinct *Methods* are recognized, generally known as the *English*, the *Roman*, and the *Continental*.¹ For the convenience of the *instructor*, we add a brief outline of each.²

ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

1. SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

6. Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds.

7. LONG SOUNDS. — Vowels have their long English sounds — *a* as in *fate*, *e* in *mete*, *i* in *pine*, *o* in *note*, *u* in *tube*, *y* in *type* — in the following situations: —

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel: *se*, *si*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mi'-sy*.

2. In all syllables before a vowel or diphthong: *de'-us*, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di'-e-i*, *ni'-hi-lum*.³

3. In penultimate⁴ syllables before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *A'-thos*, *O'-thrys*.

4. In unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*: *do-lo'-ris*, *a-gric'-o-la*.

1) *A unaccented* has the sound of a *final* in *America*: *men'-sa*.

8. SHORT SOUNDS. — Vowels have their short English sounds — *a* as in *fat*, *e* in *met*, *i* in *pin*, *o* in *not*, *u* in *tub*, *y* in *myth* — in the following situations: —

¹ Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the continent of Europe has its own method.

² The pupil will, of course, study only the method adopted in the school.

³ In these rules no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing: hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel. For the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes: thus, *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

⁴ Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant: *a'-mat*, *a'-met*, *rex'-it*, *sol*, *con'-sul*, *Te'-thys*; except *post*, *es final*, and *os final* in plural cases: *res*, *di'-es*, *hos*, *a'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r* (7, 3 and 4): *rex'-it*, *bel'-lum*, *rex-e'-runt*, *bel-lo'-rum*.

3. In all accented syllables not penultimate, before one or more consonants: *dom'-i-nus*, *pat'-ri-bus*. But,

1) *A*, *e*, or *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) followed by *e*, *i*, or *y*, before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es*, *a'-cri-a*, *me'-re-o*, *do'-ce-o*.

2) *U*, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus*, *sa-lu'-bri-tas*.

2. SOUNDS OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

9. **Ae** like *e*: *Cae'-sar*, *Daed'-ā-lus*.¹

Oe like *e*: *Oe'-ta*, *Oed'-i-pus*.¹

Au, as in author: *au'-rum*.

Eu . . . neuter: *neu'-ter*.²

3. SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

10. The consonants are pronounced, in general, as in English; but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. **C**, **G**, **S**, **T**, and **X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus,

1. **C** and **g** are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae*, and *oe*, and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (se'do), *ci'-vis*, *Cy'-rus*, *cae'-do*, *coe'-pi*, *a'-ge* (a'-je), *a'-gi*; *ca'-do* (ka'-do), *co'-go*, *cum*, *Ga'-des*.

2. **S** generally has its English sound, as in son, this: *sa'-cer*, *si'-dus*.

¹ The diphthong has the *long sound* in *Cae'-sar* and *Oe'-ta*, according to 7, 3, but the *short sound* in *Daed'-ā-lus* (Ded'-a-lus) and *Oed'-i-pus* (Ed'-i-pus), according to 8, 3, as *e* would be thus pronounced in the same situations.

² *Ei* and *ui*, when used as diphthongs, have the long sound of *i*: *hei*, *cul*.

1) *S* final after *e*, *ae*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, *r*, is pronounced like *z*: *spes*, *praes*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hī-ems*, *mons*, *pars*.

3. *T* has its regular English sound as in time: *tī-mor*, *to'-tus*.

4. *X* has generally its regular English sound, like *ks*: *rex'-i* (*rek'-si*), *ux'-or* (*uk'-sor*).

12. **C, S, T, X**, aspirated. — Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable, and followed by a vowel, *c*, *s*, *t*, and *x* are aspirated; *c*, *s*, and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, *x* that of *ksh*: *so'-ci-us* (*so'-she-us*), *Al'-si-um* (*Al'-she-um*), *ar'-ti-um* (*ar'-she-um*), *anx'-i-us* (*ank'-she-us*). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (*ca-du'-she-us*), *Sic'-y-on* (*Sish'-e-on*).

4. SYLLABLES.

13. In Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: *mo'-re*, *per-sua'-de*, *men'-sae*.

EXERCISE I.

Pronounce the following words according to the English Method.

1. Men'-sam,¹ men'-sas, men'-sis, men'-sae,² men-sa'-rum.³ 2. Ho'-ram,⁴ ho'-ras, ho'-ris, ho'-rae,⁵ ho-ra'-rum.⁶ 3. Scho'-la,⁷ scho'-lam, scho'-las, scho'-lis, scho'-lae, scho-la'-rum. 4. Co-ro'-na,⁷ co-ro'-nam, co-ro'-nas, co-ro'-nis, co-ro'-nae.⁸ 5. Ci'-vis,⁹ civ'-i-um, civ'-i-bus. 6. Car'-men,¹⁰ car'-mi-nis, car'-mi-ne.¹¹ 7. Rex,¹² re'-gis,¹³ re'-gi, re'-gum.¹³ 8. A'-ci-em,¹⁴ a'-ci-e, a'-ci-es.¹⁵

¹ 8, 2; 8, 1.

⁶ 7, 3; 8, 1.

¹¹ 8, 3; 7, 3; 7, 1.

² 8, 2; 9; 7, 1.

⁷ 7, 3; 7, 3, 1).

¹² 11, 4.

³ 8, 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.

⁸ 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.

¹³ 11, 1; 7, 3; 8, 1.

⁴ 7, 3; 8, 1.

⁹ 11, 1 and 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.

¹⁴ 8, 3, 1); 12; 8, 1.

⁵ 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.

¹⁰ 11, 1; 8, 2; 8, 1.

¹⁵ 11, 2, 1).

ROMAN METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

1. SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

15. The vowel sounds are the following: —

LONG.			SHORT.		
ā	like <i>a</i> in father :	ā'-rīs.	ǣ	like <i>a</i> in fast :	ǣ'-mēt.
ē	<i>e</i> made :	ē'-dī.	ĕ	net :	rĕ'-gĕt.
ī	<i>e</i> me :	ī'-rī.	ĭ	<i>i</i> divert :	vī'-dēt.
ō	<i>o</i> rode :	ō'-rās.	ŏ	<i>o</i> romance :	mŏ'-nēt.
ū	<i>o</i> do :	ū'-nō.	ŭ	<i>u</i> full :	sŭ'-mūs.

1. When a short vowel is lengthened by position (21, 2), it retains its short sound: *sunt*, *u* as in *sŭ'-mūs*.

4. **U.** — After *q*, and generally after *g*, *u* has the sound of *w*: *quā* (kwe), *lūn'-guā* (lin'-gwa). So also in *cuā*, *huā*, *huic*, and sometimes after *s*: *suā'-dē-o* (swa'-de-o).

2. SOUNDS OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

16. In diphthongs, each vowel retains its own sound: —

ae (for *ai*) like the English *aye* (yes): *men'-sae*.¹

au like *ow* in *how*: *cau'-sā*.

oe (for *oi*) like *oi* in *coin*: *foe'-dūs*.

1. **Ei**, as in *veil*, and **eu**, with the sounds of *e* and *u* combined, occur in a few words: *dein*, *neu'-tēr*.

3. SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

17. Most of the consonants are pronounced nearly as in English; but the following require special notice: —

c like *k* in *king*: *cē'-lēś* (kalas), *cī'-vī* (kewe).

g *g* get: *gē'-nūs*, *rĕ'-gīs*.

j *y* yet: *jā'-cēt* (yaket), *jūs'-sūm*.

s *s* son: *sā'-cēr*, *sō'-rōr*.

t *t* time: *tā'-mōr*, *tō'-tūs*.

v *w* we: *vā'-dūm*, *vī'-cī*.

¹ Combining the sounds of *a* and *i*.

4. SYLLABLES.

18. In dividing words into syllables, make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mō'-rē*, *persuā'-dē*, *men'-sae*.

EXERCISE II.

Pronounce the following Words according to the Roman Method.

1. Hō'-rā, hō'-rām, hō'-rās, hō'-rīs, hō'-rae, hō-rā'-rūm.
2. Glō'-rī-ā, glō'-rī-ām, glō'-rī-ae. 3. Dō'-nūm, dō'-nī, dō'-nō, dō'-nā, dō-nō'-rūm, dō'-nis. 4. Cī'-vīs, cī'-vī, cī'-vēm, cī'-vēs, cī'-vī-ūm, cī'-vī-būs.

CONTINENTAL METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

19. The Continental Method, as adopted in this country, is almost identical with the Roman, except in the pronunciation of the consonants, in which it more nearly coincides with the English. See 15, 16, 10, 11, 12, and 18.

EXERCISE III.

Pronounce the following Words according to the Continental Method.

1. Hō'-rā, hō'-rām, hō'-rās, hō'-rīs, hō'-rae, hō-rā'-rūm.
2. Glō'-rī-ā, glō'-rī-ām, glō'-rī-ae. 3. Dō'-nūm, dō'-nī, dō'-nō, dō'-nā, dō-nō'-rūm, dō'-nis. 4. Cī'-vīs, cī'-vī, cī'-vēm, cī'-vēs, cī'-vī-ūm, cī'-vī-būs.

QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are in quantity or length either long, short, or common.¹

21. LONG. — A syllable is long in quantity,

1. If it contains a diphthong: *haec*.

¹ Common; i.e., sometimes long, and sometimes short.

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex*, *mons*.

22. SHORT. — A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *dī'-ēs*, *vī'-ae*, *nī'-hil*.¹

23. COMMON. — A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally² short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a'-grī*.

1. The signs $\bar{}$, $\acute{}$, \circ, are used to mark quantity, the first denoting that the syllable over which it is placed is *long*, the second that it is *short*, and the third that it is *common*: *ā-grō-rūm*.³

ACCENTUATION.

24. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first: *men'-sa*.

25. Words of more than two syllables are accented⁴ on

¹ No account is taken of the breathing *h*. See 7, 2, note 3.

² A vowel is said to be *naturally* short, when it is short in its own *nature*; i.e., in itself, without reference to its position.

³ By referring to 15 and 19, it will be seen, that, in the Roman Method and in the Continental, *quantity* and *sound* coincide with each other: a vowel long in quantity is long in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is short in sound. But, by referring to 7 and 8, it will be seen, that, in the English Method, the quantity of a vowel does not at all affect its sound, except in determining the accent (25). Hence, in this method, a vowel long in quantity is often short in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is often long in sound. Thus in *rēx*, *ūrbs*, *ārs*, *sōl*, the vowels are all long in quantity; but by 8, 1, they all have the short English sounds: while in *drē*, *mārē*, the vowels are all short in quantity; but by 7, 1, and 3, they all have the long English sounds. Hence, in pronouncing according to the English Method, determine the place of the accent by the quantity (according to 25), and then determine the sounds of the letters irrespective of quantity (according to 7-12).

⁴ In the subsequent pages, the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.

the *Penult*,¹ if that is long in quantity; otherwise on the *Antepenult*:¹ *hō-nō'-ris*, *con'-sū-lis*.

4. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent; on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the third: *mōn'-u-ē'-runt*; *mōn'-u-ē-rā'-mūs*; *in-stau'-rā-vē'-runt*.

EXERCISE IV.

*Accent and pronounce the following Words.*²

1. *Cōrōnā*,³ *cōrōnae*, *cōrōnārūm*.⁴
2. *Gemmae*,⁵ *gemma*, *gemma-rūm*.
3. *Sāpientiae*,⁶ *āmicītia*, *justītia*, *glōriae*.⁷
4. *Sāpientiā*, *āmicītiā*, *justītiā*, *glōriā*.
5. *Sāpientiā*, *āmicītiā*, *justītiā*, *glōriā*.

PART SECOND. ETYMOLOGY.

37. ETYMOLOGY treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

38. The Parts of Speech⁸ are: *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Pronouns*, *Verbs*, *Adverbs*, *Prepositions*, *Conjunctions*, and *Interjections*.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

39. A Noun or Substantive is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cicēro*, Cicero; *Rōmā*, Rome; *dōmūs*, house.

¹ Penult, last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

² According to the method adopted in the school.

³ 25; 7, 4, 1).

⁵ 11, 1; 24.

⁷ 11, 1; 8, 3, 1).

⁴ 25, 4.

⁶ 25, 4; 8, 3, 1); 12.

⁸ Thus in Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*.

1. A PROPER NOUN is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cicero*; *Roma*.

2. A COMMON NOUN is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vir*, a man; *equus*, horse.

40. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case*.

I. GENDER.

41. There are three genders :¹ *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter*.

1. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

42. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

I. MASCULINES.

1. Names of *Males*: *Cicero*; *vir*, man; *rex*, king.

2. Names of *Rivers, Winds, and Months*: *Rhenus*, Rhine; *Notus*, south wind; *Martius*, March.

II. FEMININES.

1. Names of *Females*: *mulier*, woman; *leona*, lioness.

2. Names of *Countries, Towns, Islands, and Trees*: *Aegyptus*, Egypt; *Roma*, Rome; *Delos*, Delos; *pirus*, pear-tree.

II. PERSON AND NUMBER.

44. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one; the plural, more than one.

¹ In English, *gender* denotes *sex*. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males*; feminine nouns, *females*; and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female*. In Latin, however, this natural distinction of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females*; while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction, according to grammatical rules.

III. CASES.¹

45. The Latin has six cases :—

Names.	English Equivalents.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with <i>from</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>with</i> .

1. OBLIQUE CASES. — The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called the Oblique Cases.

2. LOCATIVE. — The Latin has also a few remnants of another case, called the Locative, denoting the *place in which*.

DECLENSION.

46. STEM AND ENDINGS. — The process by which the several cases of a word are formed is called Declension. It consists in the addition of certain endings to one common base, called the stem.

1. MEANING. — Accordingly each case-form contains two distinct elements: the *stem*, which gives the general meaning of the word, and the *case-ending*, which shows the relation of that meaning to some other word. Thus in *rēg-is*, of a king, the general idea, *king*, is denoted by the stem *reg*; the relation *of*, by the ending *is*.

2. CASES ALIKE. — But certain cases are not distinguished in form.

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative* in *neuters* are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike, except in the singular of nouns in *us* of the second declension (51).²

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike. ✕

¹ The case of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words; as, *John's book*. Here the *possessive case* shows that John sustains to the book the relation of *possessor*.

² And in some nouns of Greek origin.

47. FIVE DECLENSIONS. — In Latin there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the endings of the Stem, or of the Genitive Singular, as follows : —

	STEM-ENDINGS.	GENITIVE ENDINGS.
DEC. I.	a	ae
II.	o	i
III.	i or consonant.	is
IV.	u	ūs
V.	e	ei

FIRST DECLENSION. — A Nouns.

48. Nouns of the first declension end in

ā and *ē*, feminine; *ās* and *ēs*, masculine.¹

Nouns in *a* are declined as follows : —

SINGULAR.			
Example.		Meaning.	Case-Endings
<i>Nom.</i> mens ā ,		a table,	ā
<i>Gen.</i> mens ae ,		of a table,	ae
<i>Dat.</i> mens ae ,		to, for, a table,	ae
<i>Acc.</i> mens ām ,		a table,	ām
<i>Voc.</i> mens ā ,		O table,	ā
<i>Abl.</i> mens ā ,	with, from, by, a table,		ā
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i> mens ae ,		tables,	ae
<i>Gen.</i> mens arūm ,		of tables,	arūm
<i>Dat.</i> mens is ,		to, for, tables,	is
<i>Acc.</i> mens ās ,		tables,	ās
<i>Voc.</i> mens ae ,		O tables,	ae
<i>Abl.</i> mens is ,	with, from, by, tables,		is.

1. STEM. — In nouns of the First Declension, the stem ends in *a*.

2. In the PARADIGM, observe,

1) That the stem is *mensa*, and that the Nominative Singular is the same.

¹ That is, nouns of this declension in *a* and *e* are feminine, and those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

2) That the several cases are distinguished from each other by their case-endings.

3) That these case-endings contain the stem-ending *a*.

3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE. — Like *mensa* decline: —

Ala, wing; *āqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortūna*, fortune.

4. LOCATIVE. — Names of towns, and a very few other words, have a Locative Singular in *ae*: *Rōmae*, at Rome; *militiae*, in war.

EXERCISE V.

I. Vocabulary.

Amicitia, ae, ¹ f. ²	friendship.
Corōnā, ae, f.	crown.
Gemmā, ae, f.	gem.
Glōriā, ae, f.	glory.
Hōrā, ae, f.	hour.
Iustitiā, ae, f.	justice.
Sāpientiā, ae, f.	wisdom.
Schōlā, ae, f.	school.

II. Translate into English.

1. Corōnā,³ corōnā, corōnae,⁴ corōnam, coronārum, corōnis, corōnas. 2. Gemmā, gemmā, gemmae, gemmam, gemmārum, gemmis, gemmas. 3. Sapiētiā, amicitia, iustitiā, gloriā. 4. Sapientiam, amicitiam, iustitiam, gloriam. 5. Sapientia, amicitia, iustitia, gloria. 6. Scholārum, horārum. 7. Scholis, horis. 8. Scholas, horas.

¹ The ending *ae* is the case-ending of the Genitive: *amicitia*; Gen., *amicitiae*.

² Gender is indicated in the vocabularies by *m.* for masculine, *f.* for feminine, and *n.* for neuter.

³ As the Latin has no article, a noun may, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated (1) without the article; as, *corōna*, crown; (2) with the indefinite article *a* or *an*; as, *corōna*, a crown; (3) with the definite article *the*; as, *corōna*, the crown.

⁴ When the same Latin form may be found in two or more cases, the pupil is expected to give the meaning for each case. Thus *corōnae* may be in the Genitive or Dative Singular, or in the Nominative or Vocative Plural.

III. *Translute into Latin.*

1. Friendship, friendships. 2. Of¹ friendship, of friendships. 3. To friendship, to friendships. 4. By friendship, by friendships. 5. Justice, by justice, of justice, to justice. 6. Wisdom, glory. 7. With wisdom, with glory. 8. To wisdom, to glory. 9. Of wisdom, of glory. 10. Of a² crown, of a gem. 11. With the² crowns, with the gems,

SECOND DECLENSION.—O NOUNS.

51. Nouns of the second declension end in

ēr, ir, ūs, and os, masculine; ūm, and on, neuter.

Nouns in *er, ir, us, and um*, are declined as follows:—

Servus, slave. Puer, boy. Ager, field. Templum, temple.

SINGULAR.

N. servūs	puēr	āgēr	templūm
G. servi	puērī	āgrī	templī
D. servō	puērō	agrō	templō
A. servūm	puērūm	agrūm	templūm
V. servē	puēr	agēr	templūm
A. servō	puērō	agrō	templō

PLURAL.

N. servi	puērī	āgrī	templā
G. servōrūm	puērōrūm	agrōrūm	templōrūm
D. servis	puērīs	agris	templīs
A. servōs	puērōs	agrōs	templā
V. servi	puērī	agri	templā
A. servis.	puērīs.	agris.	templīs.

1. STEM. — In nouns of the Second Declension, the stem ends in **o**.

2. In the PARADIGMS, observe,

¹ The pupil will observe that the English prepositions, *of, to, by*, may be rendered into Latin by simply changing the ending of the word. Thus *friendship*, *amicitia*; *of friendship*, *amicitiae*.

² The pupil will remember that the English articles, *a, an, and the*, are not to be rendered into Latin at all. *Crown, a crown, and the crown*, are all rendered into Latin by the same word.

- 1) That the stems are *servo*, *puĕro*; *agro*, and *templo*.
- 2) That the stem-ending *o* becomes *u* in the endings *us* and *um*.
- 3) That the case-endings, including the stem-ending *o*, are as follows:—

SINGULAR.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> ūs ¹	ŭm
<i>Gen.</i> i	i
<i>Dat.</i> o	o
<i>Acc.</i> ūm	ŭm
<i>Voc.</i> ē ¹	ŭm
<i>Abl.</i> o	o

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> i	ă
<i>Gen.</i> ōrŭm	ōrŭm
<i>Dat.</i> is	is
<i>Acc.</i> ōs	ă
<i>Voc.</i> i	ă
<i>Abl.</i> is.	is.

3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE. — Like *SERVUS*: *dōmīnus*, master. Like *PUER*: *gēner*, son-in-law. Like *AGER*: *māgister*, master. Like *TEMPLUM*: *bellum*, war.

6. LOCATIVE. — Names of towns, and a few other words, have a Locative Singular in *i*: *Cōrinthi*, at Corinth; *hūmi*, on the ground.

EXERCISE VI.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Dōnŭm</i> , I, n.	<i>gift.</i>
<i>Gēnēr</i> , <i>gēnērī</i> , m.	<i>son-in-law.</i>
<i>Libēr</i> , <i>librī</i> , m.	<i>book.</i>
<i>Ocŭlŭs</i> , I, m.	<i>eye.</i>
<i>Praeceptŭm</i> , I, n.	<i>rule, precept.</i>
<i>Sōcēr</i> , <i>sōcērī</i> , m.	<i>father-in-law.</i>
<i>Tŷrannŭs</i> , I, m.	<i>tyrant.</i>
<i>Verbŭm</i> , I, n.	<i>word.</i>

¹ The endings of the Nominative and Vocative Singular are wanting in nouns in *er*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Oculus, oculi, oculo, oculum, oculē, oculorum, oculis, oculos. 2. Socer, soceri, socero, socerum, socerorum, soceris, soceros. 3. Servi, tyranni. 4. Pueri, genēri. 5. Agri, libri. 6. Templi, doni. 7. Servo, tyranno. 8. Puerum, genērum. 9. Agrorum, librōrum. 10. Tempia, dona. 11. Servum, servos. 12. Genēri, generorum. 13. Agri, agrorum. 14. Dono, donis. 15. Verbi, praecepti.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The slave, the slaves. 2. For the slave, for the slaves. 3. Of the slave, of the slaves. 4. Of the father-in-law, of the son-in-law. 5. Of the fathers-in-law, of the sons-in-law. 6. For the fathers-in-law, for the sons-in-law. 7. The boy, the field. 8. The boys, the fields. 9. The gift, the gifts. 10. With the gift, with the gifts. . .

SECOND DECLENSION. — CONTINUED.

RULE II — Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE:¹

Cluilius rex mōritur, *Cluilius the king dies*. — Liv. Urbes Carthāgo atque Nūmantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia*. — Cic.

I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING.

In parsing a Noun, Adjective, or Pronoun,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Decline² it.

¹ A noun or pronoun used to explain or identify another noun or pronoun denoting the same person or thing, is called an *appositive*; as, *Cluilius rex*, Cluilius the king. Here *rex*, the king, is the appositive, showing the rank or office of Cluilius, — *Cluilius the king*. The noun or pronoun to which the appositive is added — *Cluilius* in the example — is called the *subject* of the appositive.

² Adjectives should also be compared (162).

3. Give its Gender, Number, Case, &c.
4. Give its Syntax,¹ and the Rule for it.

MODEL.

Artēmisīā rēginā, *Artemisia the queen.*

Regina is a noun (39) of the First Declension (48), as it has *ae* in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *regīna* (48, 1). Singular: *regīna, regīnae, regīnae, regīnam, regīnā, regīnā*. Plural: *regīnae, regīnārum, regīnis, regīnas, regīnae, regīnis*. It is of the Feminine gender, as the names of females are feminine by 42, II. 1. It is in the Nominative Singular, in apposition with its subject *Artemisia*, with which it agrees in case, according to Rule II.: "An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE."

EXERCISE VII.

I. Vocabulary.

Caiūs, ii, m.	<i>Caius</i> , a proper name.
Filiā, ae, f.	<i>daughter</i> .
Hastā, ae, f.	<i>spear</i> .
Pisistrātūs, i, m.	<i>Pisistratus</i> , Tyrant of Athens.
Rāmūs, i, m.	<i>branch</i> .
Rēginā, ae, f.	<i>queen</i> .
Tulliā, ae, f.	<i>Tullia</i> , a proper name.

II. Translate into English.

1. Ramus, hastā. 2. Rami, hastae. 3. Ramo, hastae. 4. Ramum, hastam. 5. Ramo, hastā. 6. Ramōrum, hastārum. 7. Ramis, hastis. 8. Ramos, hastas. 9. Tyranni, tyrannōrum. 10. Verbum, verba. 11. Verbo, verbis. 12. Templum, templa. 13. Templi, templōrum. 14. Pisistrātus tyrannus.² 15. Pisistrāti tyranni. 16. Pisistrāto tyranno. 17. Tulliā filiā. 18. Tulliae filiae.

¹ By the *Syntax* of a word is meant the grammatical construction of it. Thus we give the Syntax of *regīna*, under the Model, by stating that it is in apposition with its subject, *Artemisia*.

² *Tyrannus* is an appositive, in the Nominative, in agreement with its subject, *Pisistrātus*, according to Rule II. 363.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The tyrant, the crown. 2. The tyrants, the crowns.
3. Of the tyrant, of the crown. 4. Of the tyrants, of the crowns.
5. To the tyrant, to the crown. 6. To the tyrants, to the crowns.
7. The book, the books. 8. With the book, with the books.
9. Of Pisistratus, for Pisistratus.
10. Of the queen, for the queen. 11. Caius the slave.
12. Of Caius the slave. 13. For Caius the slave.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CONSONANT AND I NOUNS.

55. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x

56. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes : —

I. Nouns whose stem ends in a *Consonant*.

II. Nouns whose stem ends in **I**.

CLASS I. — CONSONANT STEMS.

57. STEMS ENDING IN A LABIAL : **B** or **P**.

Princeps, **m.**,¹ a leader, chief. Case-Endings.

SINGULAR.

N. princeps,	a leader,	s
G. principis,	of a leader,	is
D. principī,	to, for, a leader,	i
A. principem,	a leader,	em
V. princeps,	O leader,	s
A. principē,	with, from, by, a leader,	ē

PLURAL.

N. principēs,	leaders,	ēs
G. principūm,	of leaders,	ūm
D. principibūs,	to, for, leaders,	ibūs
A. principēs,	leaders,	ēs
V. principēs,	O leaders,	ēs
A. principibūs,	with, from, by, leaders,	ibūs.

¹ M stands for masculine, F for feminine, and N for neuter.

1. STEM AND CASE-ENDINGS. — In this Paradigm observe that the stem is *prinċp*, modified before an additional syllable to *prinċip*, and that the case-endings are appended to the stem without change.

2. VARIABLE RADICAL VOWEL. — In the final syllable of dissyllabic consonant stems, short *e* or *i* generally takes the form of *ĕ* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., and that of *ī* in all the other cases. Thus *princeps*, *principis*, and *jūdex*, *judicis* (59), both alike have *e* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., and *i* in all the other cases, though in *princeps*, the original form of the radical vowel is *e*, and in *jūdex* *i*.

58. STEMS ENDING IN A DENTAL: D or T.

Lapis, m., *stone*. Aetas, f., *age*. Miles, m., *soldier*.

SINGULAR.

N. lāpis	aetās	milēs
G. lapidīs	aetātīs	militīs
D. lapidī	aetātī	militī
A. lapidēm	aetātēm	militēm
V. lapis	aetās	milēs
A. lapidē	aetātē	militē

PLURAL.

N. lapidēs	aetātēs	militēs
G. lapidūm	aetātūm	militūm
D. lapidibūs	aetatibūs	militibūs
A. lapidēs	aetātēs	militēs
V. lapidēs	aetātēs	militēs
A. lapidibūs.	aetatibūs.	militibūs.

Nepos, m., *grandson*. Virtus, f., *virtue*. Caput, n., *head*.

SINGULAR.

N. nēpōs	virtūs	cāpūt
G. nepōtīs	virtutīs	capitīs
D. nepōtī	virtutī	capitī
A. nepōtēm	virtutēm	capūt
V. nepōs	virtūs	capūt
A. nepōtē	virtutē	capitē

	PLURAL.	
<i>N. nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capitā</i>
<i>G. nepōtūm</i>	<i>virtūtūm</i>	<i>capitūm</i>
<i>D. nepotibūs</i>	<i>virtutibūs</i>	<i>capitibūs</i>
<i>A. nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capitā</i>
<i>V. nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capitā</i>
<i>A. nepotibūs.</i>	<i>virtutibūs.</i>	<i>capitibūs.</i>

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS. — In these Paradigms observe,
1) That the stems are *lāpīd*, *aetāl*, *mīlūt*, *nēpōt*, *virtūt*, and *cāpūt*.
2) That *mīlēs* has a variable vowel, *ē*, *ī*, and *cāpūt*, *ū*, *ī*.
3) That the dental *d* or *t* is dropped before *s*: *lāpis* for *lapids*, *aetās* for *aetats*, *mīlēs* for *milets*, *virtūs* for *virtuts*.
4) That the case-endings, except in the *neuter*, *cāpūt* (46, 2), are the same as those given above. See 57.
5) That *cāpūt* has no case-ending in the *Nom.*, *Acc.*, and *Voc.* *Sing.*, but has *g* in the *Nom.*, *Acc.*, and *Voc.* *Plur.*

59. STEMS ENDING IN A GUTTURAL: **C** OR **G**.

<i>Rex, m.,</i> <i>king.</i>	<i>Judex, m. & f.,</i> <i>judge.</i>	<i>Radix, f.,</i> <i>root.</i>	<i>Dux, m. & f.,</i> <i>leader.</i>
SINGULAR.			
<i>N. rex</i>	<i>judex</i>	<i>rādx</i>	<i>dux</i>
<i>G. regīs</i>	<i>judicīs</i>	<i>radicīs</i>	<i>ducīs</i>
<i>D. regī</i>	<i>judicī</i>	<i>radicī</i>	<i>ducī</i>
<i>A. regēm</i>	<i>judicēm</i>	<i>radicēm</i>	<i>ducēm</i>
<i>V. rex</i>	<i>judex</i>	<i>radix</i>	<i>dux</i>
<i>A. regē</i>	<i>judicē</i>	<i>radicē</i>	<i>ducē</i>
PLURAL.			
<i>N. regēs</i>	<i>judicēs</i>	<i>radicēs</i>	<i>ducēs</i>
<i>G. regūm</i>	<i>judicūm</i>	<i>radicūm</i>	<i>ducūm</i>
<i>D. regibūs</i>	<i>judicibūs</i>	<i>radicibūs</i>	<i>ducibūs</i>
<i>A. regēs</i>	<i>judicēs</i>	<i>radicēs</i>	<i>ducēs</i>
<i>V. regēs</i>	<i>judicēs</i>	<i>radicēs</i>	<i>ducēs</i>
<i>A. regibūs.</i>	<i>judicibūs.</i>	<i>radicibūs.</i>	<i>ducibūs.</i>

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS. — In the Paradigms, observe,
1) That the stems are *rēg*, *judic*, *radic*, and *duc* — *judic* with the variable vowel — *ī*, *ē*. See 57, 2.
2) That the case-endings are those given in 57.

3) That **s** in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. unites with *c* or *g* of the stem, and forms *z*.

60. STEMS ENDING IN A LIQUID : **L, M, N, OR R.**

Sol, <i>m.</i> , <i>sun.</i>	Consul, <i>m.</i> , <i>consul.</i>	Passer, <i>m.</i> , <i>sparrow.</i>	Pater, <i>m.</i> , <i>father.</i>
SINGULAR.			
N. sol	consul	passer	pater
G. solis	consulis	passeris	pateris
D. soli	consuli	passeri	patri
A. solēm	consulēm	passerēm	paterēm
V. sol	consul	passer	pater
A. solē	consulē	passerē	paterē
PLURAL.			
N. solēs	consulēs	passerēs	paterēs
G. solū	consulū	passerū	paterū
D. solibus	consulibus	passeribus	pateribus
A. solēs	consulēs	passerēs	paterēs
V. solēs	consulēs	passerēs	paterēs
A. solibus.	consulibus.	passeribus.	pateribus.
Pastor, <i>m.</i> , <i>shepherd.</i>	Leo, <i>m.</i> , <i>lion.</i>	Virgo, <i>f.</i> , <i>maiden.</i>	Carmen, <i>n.</i> , <i>song.</i>
SINGULAR.			
N. pastor	leo	virgo	carmen
G. pastoris	leonis	virginis	carminis
D. pastori	leoni	virgini	carmini
A. pastorēm	leonēm	virginēm	carmen
V. pastor	leo	virgo	carmen
A. pastore	leonē	virginē	carminē
PLURAL.			
N. pastores	leones	virgines	carmina
G. pastorum	leonum	virginum	carminum
D. pastoribus	leonibus	virginibus	carminibus
A. pastores	leones	virgines	carmina
V. pastores	leones	virgines	carmina
A. pastoribus.	leonibus.	virginibus.	carminibus.

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS. — In the Paradigms, observe,

1) That the stems are *sol*, *consul*, *passer*, *pater*, *pastor*, *leo*, *virgo*, and *carmen*.

2) That *virgo* has the variable vowel, *o*, *i*; and *carmen*, *e*, *i*.

3) That in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. **s**, the usual case-ending for masculine and feminine nouns, is omitted, and that in those cases the stem *pastor* shortens **o**, while *leōn* and *virgōn* drop **n**.

61. STEMS ENDING IN **S**.

Flos, m., <i>flower.</i>	Jus, n., <i>right.</i>	Opus, n., <i>work.</i>	Corpus, n., <i>body.</i>
SINGULAR.			
N. <i>flos</i>	jūs	ōpūs	corpūs
G. <i>flōris</i>	jūris	opēris	corpōris
D. <i>florī</i>	jurī	opērī	corpōrī
A. <i>florēm</i>	jus	opūs	corpūs
V. <i>flos</i>	jus	opūs	corpūs
A. <i>florē</i>	jurē	opērē	corpōrē
PLURAL.			
N. <i>florēs</i>	jurā	opērā	corpōrā
G. <i>florūm</i>	jurūm	opērūm	corpōrūm
D. <i>floribūs</i>	juribūs	operibūs	corporibūs
A. <i>florēs</i>	jurā	opērā	corpōrā
V. <i>florēs</i>	jurā	opērā	corpōrā
A. <i>floribūs.</i>	juribūs.	operibūs.	corporibūs.

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS. — In the Paradigms observe,

1) That the stems are *flos*, *jūs*, *ōpēs*, and *corpōs*.

2) That *ōpūs* has the variable vowel, **ē**, **ī**, and *corpūs*, **ō**, **ī**.

3) That **s** of the stem becomes **r** between two vowels: *flos*, *flōris* (for *flōsis*).

4) That the Nominative and Vocative Singular omit the case-ending. See 60, 1, 3).

RULE XVI. — Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive :¹

Cātōnis orātiones, *Cato's orations*. — Cic. Castra hostium, *the camp of the enemy*. — Liv. Mors Hāmīlcāris, *the death of Hamīlcar*. — Liv.

¹ The Appositive (363, p. 15) and this qualifying Genitive resemble each other in the fact that they both qualify the meaning of

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Cātōnīs ōrātiōnēs, *Cato's orations.*

Cātōnis is a proper noun, as it is the name of a person (39, 1). It is of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (47); of Class I., as its stem ends in a consonant (56, I.): STEM, *Cātōn*; Nom. *Cato* (*n* dropped). Singular:¹ *Cato*, *Cātōnis*, *Cātōni*, *Cātōnem*, *Cato*, *Cātōne*. It is of the Masculine gender, as the names of males are masculine by 42, I. 1. It is in the Genitive Singular, depending upon *ōrātiōnes*, according to Rule XVI.: "Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive."

EXERCISE VIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Cicērō, Cicērōnīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Cicero</i> , the Roman orator.
Consūl, consūlīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>consul</i> . ²
Exsūl, exsūlīs, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	<i>exile</i> .
Frāter, frātrīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>brother</i> .
Lex, lēgis, <i>f.</i>	<i>law</i> .
Nōmēn, nōmīnīs, <i>n.</i>	<i>name</i> .
Ōrātiō, ōrātiōnīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>oration, speech</i> .
Ōrātōr, ōrātōrīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>orator</i> .
Victōr, victōrīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>victor, conqueror</i> .

another noun: *Cluilius rex*, Cluilius the king; *Cātōnis ōrātiōnes*, Cato's orations, or the orations of Cato. Here the Appositive *rex* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of Cluilius, by showing *what* Cluilius is meant, — *Cluilius the king*: in a similar manner, the Genitive *Cātōnis* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of *ōrātiōnes*, by showing *what* orations are meant, — *the orations of Cato*. Yet the Appositive and the Genitive are readily distinguished by the fact that the former qualifies a noun denoting the *same* person or thing as itself, while the Genitive qualifies a noun denoting a *different* person or thing. Thus, in the examples above, *Cluilius* and the Appositive *rex* denote the *same* person; while *ōrātiōnes* and the Genitive *Cātōnis* denote entirely *different* objects.

¹ As *Cato* is the name of a person, the Plural is seldom used.

² The *consuls* were joint presidents of the Roman commonwealth. They were elected annually, and were two in number.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Princĭpis, princĭpum. 2. Princĭpem, princĭpes. 3. les, millĕtes. 4. Millĭti, militĭbus. 5. Caput, capita. Capĭte, capitĭbus. 7. Rex, reges. 8. Regis, regŭm. Consŭli, consulĭbus. 10. Leo, leōnis, leōnes. 11. rgo, virgĭnis, virgĭnes. 12. Solis, solem, soles. 13. solibus, consulĭbus. 14. Patri, pastōri. 15. Patres, pas-
res. 16. Carmen, carmĭna. 17. Opĕris, corpōris. 18. icerōnis¹ oratio. 19. Cicerōnis oratiōnes. 20. Oratiōne
onsŭlis.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The exile, the exiles. 2. For the exile, for the
exiles. 3. Of an exile, of the exiles. 4. The shepherd,
the orator. 5. Of shepherds, of orators. 6. Shepherds,
orators. 7. Of a shepherd, of an orator. 8. A song, a
name. 9. Songs, names. 10. Of songs, of names. 11.
Father, brother. 12. To the father, to the brother. 13.
Kings, laws. 14. Of the king, of the law. 15. Of the
kings, of the laws. 16. For the conqueror, of the con-
queror. 17. The brother of the conqueror.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS II. — I STEMS.

62. STEMS ENDING IN **I** — *Nouns in is, — Abl. Sing. in ĭ, or in ĭ or ě.*

Tussis, f., Turris, f., Ignis, m., Case-Endings.
cough. tower. fire.

SINGULAR.

N. tussĭs	turrĭs	ignĭs	is
G. tussĭs	turrĭs	ignĭs	is
D. tussĭ	turrĭ	ignĭ	i
A. tussĭm	turrĭm, ěm	ignĕm	ĭm, ěm
V. tussĭs	turrĭs	ignĭs	is
A. tussĭ	turrĭ, ě	ignĭ, ě	i, ě

¹ Cicerōnis is in the Genitive, and qualifies the meaning of *oratio*, according to Rule XVI., 395.

PLURAL.

N. tussēs	turrēs	ignēs	ēs
G. tussīūm	turriūm	igniūm	iūm
D. tussibūs	turribūs	ignibūs	ibūs
A. tussēs, is	turrēs, is	ignēs, is	ēs, is
V. tussēs	turrēs	ignēs	ēs
A. tussibūs.	turribūs.	ignibūs.	ibūs.

1. PARADIGMS. — Observe,

- 1) That the stems are *tussi*, *turri*, and *igni*.
- 2) That the case-endings here given include the stem-ending *i*, which disappears in certain cases.
- 3) That these Paradigms differ in declension only in the Accusative and Ablative Singular.

63. STEMS ENDING IN **I** — *Neuters in ē, al, and ar.*

Mare, sea.	Animāl, animal.	Calcar, spur.	Case-Endings.
---------------	--------------------	------------------	---------------

SINGULAR.

N. mārē	ānimāl	calcār	ē — ¹
G. marīs	animālīs	calcārīs	īs
D. marī	animālī	calcārī	ī
A. mārē	animāl	calcār	ē — ¹
V. mārē	animāl	calcār	ē — ¹
A. marī	animālī	calcārī	ī

PLURAL.

N. mariā	animaliā	calcarīā	iā
G. mariūm	animaliūm	calcarīūm	iūm
D. maribūs	animalibūs	calcaribūs	ibūs
A. mariā	animaliā	calcarīā	iā
V. mariā	animaliā	calcarīā	iā
A. maribūs.	animalibūs.	calcaribūs.	ibūs.

1. PARADIGMS. — Observe,

- 1) That the stem-ending *i* is changed to *e* in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of *māre*, and dropped in the same cases of *ānimāl* (for *animāle*) and *calcār* (for *calcāre*).
- 2) That the case-endings include the stem-ending *i*.

¹ The dash denotes that the case-ending is sometimes wanting.

64. STEMS ENDING IN **I** — *Nouns in is, es, and s (x) preceded by a Consonant, — Abl. Sing. in ě.*

Hostis, m. & f., enemy.	Nubes, f., cloud.	Urbs, f., city.	Arx, f., citadel.
----------------------------	----------------------	--------------------	----------------------

SINGULAR.

N. hostis	nūbēs	urbs	arx ¹
G. hostis	nubis	urbis	arcis
D. hosti	nubī	urbī	arci
A. hostem	nubēm	urbēm	arcēm
V. hostis	nubēs	urbs	arx
A. hostē	nubē	urbē	arcē

PLURAL.

N. hostēs	nubēs	urbēs	arcēs
G. hostiūm	nubiūm	urbiūm	arciūm
D. hostibūs	nubibūs	urbibūs	arcibūs
A. hostēs, is	nubēs, is	urbēs, is	arcēs, is
V. hostēs	nubēs	urbēs	arcēs
A. hostibūs.	nubibūs.	urbibūs.	arcibūs.

1. STEMS. — These Paradigms show a combination of i-stems and consonant stems: *hosti, host*; *urbi, urb*; *arci, arc*. The stem of *nubēs* seems to be *nubēs, nubi, nub*.

67. CASE-ENDINGS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.

CONSONANT STEMS.		I-STEMS.	
Masc. & Fem.	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
N. s — ²	— ²	is, es, s	ě — ²
G. is	is	is	is
D. i	i	i	i
A. ěm	—	im, ěm	ě —
V. s	—	is, es, s	ě —
A. ě	ě	i, ě	i

¹ X in *arx* = *cs*, — *c* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nominative ending.

² The dash denotes that the case-ending is wanting.

PLURAL.			
N. <i>ēs</i>	<i>ā</i>	<i>ēs</i>	<i>iā</i>
G. <i>ūm</i>	<i>ūm</i>	<i>iūm</i>	<i>iūm</i>
D. <i>ibūs</i>	<i>ibūs</i>	<i>ibūs</i>	<i>ibūs</i>
A. <i>ēs</i>	<i>ā</i>	<i>ēs, is</i>	<i>iā</i>
V. <i>ēs</i>	<i>ā</i>	<i>ēs</i>	<i>iā</i>
A. <i>ibūs.</i>	<i>ibūs.</i>	<i>ibūs.</i>	<i>ibūs.</i>

99. Nouns of the third declension in

o, or, os, or, and es increasing in the genitive,¹
are masculine: *sermo*, discourse; *dōlōr*, pain; *mōs*, custom; *aggēr*, mound; *pēs*, genitive *pēdis*, foot.

105. Nouns of the third declension in

as, is, ys, x, es not increasing in the genitive, and **s** preceded by a consonant,
are feminine: *aetās*, age; *nāvīs*, ship; *chlāmŷs*, cloak; *pax*, peace; *nūbēs*, cloud; *urbs*, city.

111. Nouns of the third declension in

a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and us,
are neuter: *poēmā*, poem; *mārē*, sea; *lāc*, milk; *ānīmāl*, animal; *carmēn*, song; *cāpūt*, head; *corpūs*, body.

RULE XXXII. — Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions.²

Ad āmicum scripsi, *I have written to a friend.* — Cic. In cūri-

¹ That is, having more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative.

² The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other: *in Italia esse*, to be in Italy; *ante me*, before me. Here *in* and *ante* are prepositions. In the Vocabularies, each preposition, as it occurs, will be marked as such; and the case which may be used with it will be specified. It has not been thought advisable, at this early stage of the course, to burden the memory of the learner with a list of prepositions and their cases.

am, into the senate-house. — Liv. In *Itālia*,¹ in *Italy*. — Nep. Pro castris, before the camp.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Ad *amicūm*, To a friend.

Amicum is a noun of the Second Declension (51), as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *amico* (51, 1). Singular: *amicus*, *amici*, *amico*, *amicum*, *amice*, *amico*. Plural: *amici*, *amicorum*, *amicis*, *amicos*, *amici*, *amicis*. It is of the Masculine gender by 51, is in the Accusative Singular, and is used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII.: "The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions." The Accusative is used with *ad*.

EXERCISE IX.

I. Vocabulary.

Ad, <i>prep.</i> with acc.	<i>to, towards.</i>
Avis, <i>avis</i> , <i>f.</i>	<i>bird.</i>
Civis, <i>civis</i> , <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>citizen.</i>
Civitas, <i>civitatis</i> , <i>f.</i>	<i>state.</i>
Contra, <i>prep.</i> with acc.	<i>against, contrary to.</i>
Mors, <i>mortis</i> , <i>f.</i>	<i>death.</i>
Pax, <i>pacis</i> , <i>f.</i>	<i>peace.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Nubis, nubium. 2. Nubem, nubes. 3. Avis, aves.
4. Avi, avibus. 5. Urbs, urbes. 6. Urbi, urbibus. 7. Nubēs, milēs.
8. Nubis, militis. 9. Nubem, militem.
10. Rex, judex. 11. Regis, judicis. 12. Reges, judices.
13. Civitas, civitates. 14. Virtus, virtutes. 15. Mors regis.
16. Morte regis. 17. Mortes regum. 18. Virtus judicis.
19. Pacis gloriā. 20. Ad gloriam.² 21. Contra regem.
22. Ad turrim. 23. Contra hostes.

¹ Here the Ablative *Italia* is used with *in*, though, in the second example, the Accusative *curiam* is used with the same preposition. The rule is, that the Latin preposition *in* is used with the Accusative when it means *into*, and with the Ablative when it means *in*.

² The Accusative *gloriam* is here used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII. 432.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The citizen, to the citizen, of the citizen, of citizens, for citizens. 2. A cloud, clouds, of a cloud, of clouds, with a cloud, with clouds. 3. A king, a law. 4. Of fire, with fire. 5. Of the animal, for the animals. 6. The law of the state. 7. The laws of the state. 8. Contrary to¹ the law. 9. Contrary to the laws of the state. 10. By the death of the conqueror.

FOURTH DECLENSION. — U NOUNS.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

ūs, — *masculine*; **ū**, — *neuter*.

They are declined as follows: —

Fructus, fruit. Cornu, horn. Case-Endings.

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> fruct ūs	corn ū	ūs	ū
<i>G.</i> fruct ūs	corn ūs	ūs	ūs
<i>D.</i> fruct ui	corn ū	ui	ū
<i>A.</i> fruct um	corn ū	um	ū
<i>V.</i> fruct ūs	corn ū	ūs	ū
<i>A.</i> fruct ū	corn ū	ū	ū

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> fruct ūs	corn uā	ūs	uā
<i>G.</i> fruct uūm	corn uūm	uūm	uūm
<i>D.</i> fruct ibūs	corn ibūs	ibūs (ūbūs)	ibūs (ūbūs)
<i>A.</i> fruct ūs	corn uā	ūs	uā
<i>V.</i> fruct ūs	corn uā	ūs	uā
<i>A.</i> fruct ibūs.	corn ibūs.	ibūs (ūbūs).	ibūs (ūbūs).

1. **STEM.** — In nouns of the fourth declension the stem ends in **ū**: *fructū*, *cornū*.

2. **CASE-ENDINGS.** — The case-endings here given contain the stem-ending **ū**, weakened to **ī** in *ibūs*, but retained in *ūbūs*.

¹ See Rule XXXII. 432. The words *contrary to* are to be rendered by a single Latin preposition.

EXERCISE X.

I. Vocabulary.

Adventūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>arrival, approach.</i>
Antē, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>before.</i>
Caesār, Caesāris, <i>m.</i>	<i>Cæsar, a Roman surname.</i>
Cantūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>singing, song.</i>
Conspectūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>sight, presence.</i>
Exercītūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>army.</i>
Hostīs, hostīs, <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>enemy.</i>
Impētūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>attack.</i>
In, <i>prep.</i>	<i>into with acc., in with abl.</i>
Luscīniā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>nightingale.</i>
Occāsūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>the setting, as of the sun.</i>
Post, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>after.</i>
Ver, vēris, <i>n.</i>	<i>spring.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Fructus, cantus. 2. Fructibus, cantibus. 3. Cantus lusciniæ.¹ 4. Cantu lusciniæ. 5. Cantibus lusciniarum. 6. Adventus veris. 7. Post adventum² veris.¹ 8. Solis occāsus. 9. Post solis occāsum. 10. Caesāris adventu. 11. Ante adventum Caesāris. 12. Impētus hostium. 13. Impētu hostium. 14. In conspectu exercītus.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The army, the armies. 2. For the army, for the armies. 3. Of the army, of the armies. 4. The arrival of the army. 5. Before the arrival of the army. 6. After³

¹ Genitive, according to Rule XVI. See p. 21.

² Used with *post*, according to Rule XXXII. See p. 26.

³ See Rule XXXII. 432, p. 26. The pupil will remember that the English prepositions, *to, for, with, from, by*, are generally rendered into Latin by merely putting the noun in the proper case, i.e. in the Dative for *to* or *for*, and in the Ablative for *with, from, by*. Other English prepositions, *before, after, behind, between*, etc., are rendered into Latin by corresponding Latin prepositions.

the arrival of the consul. 7. The singing of the night-
ingale. 8. After the setting of the sun. 9. Before the
attack of the enemy. 10. After the attack of the enemy.
11. In¹ the city, into¹ the city, for the city. 12. In sight
of the king. 13. By the orations of Cicero. 14. Before
the death of the king. 15. After the death of Cicero, the
consul.

FIFTH DECLENSION.—E NOUNS.

120. Nouns of the fifth declension end in **ēs**, — *femi-
nine*, and are declined as follows:² —

Dies, day.³ Res, thing. Case-Endings.

SINGULAR.		
<i>N. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>G. diēī</i>	<i>rēī</i>	<i>eī</i>
<i>D. diēī</i>	<i>rēī</i>	<i>eī</i>
<i>A. diēm</i>	<i>rēm</i>	<i>ēm</i>
<i>V. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>A. diē</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>e</i>
PLURAL.		
<i>N. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>G. diērūm</i>	<i>rērūm</i>	<i>ērūm</i>
<i>D. diēbūs</i>	<i>rēbūs</i>	<i>ēbūs</i>
<i>A. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>V. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>A. diēbūs.</i>	<i>rēbūs.</i>	<i>ēbūs.</i>

1. **STEM.** — The stem of nouns of the fifth declension ends in **ē**: *diē, re.*

2. **CASE-ENDINGS.** — The case-endings here given contain the stem ending **ē**, which appears in all the cases. It is shortened

¹ See page 27, foot-note 1.

² But nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative plural; and many admit no plural whatever.

³ *Dies*, day, is an exception in gender, as it is generally *masculine*, though sometimes *feminine* in the singular.

(1) in the ending *ei*,¹ when preceded by a consonant, and (2) in the ending *em*.

EXERCISE XI.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Acies, aciei, f.</i>	<i>battle-array, army.</i>
<i>Amicus, i, m.</i>	<i>friend.</i>
<i>Cibus, i, m.</i>	<i>food.</i>
<i>Dē, prep. with abl.</i>	<i>concerning.</i>
<i>Dies, diei, m. and f.</i>	<i>day.</i>
<i>Facies, faciei, f.</i>	<i>face, appearance.</i>
<i>Numerus, i, m.</i>	<i>number, quantity.</i>
<i>Res, rei, f.</i>	<i>thing, affair.</i>
<i>Species, speciei, f.</i>	<i>appearance.</i>
<i>Spes, spei, f.</i>	<i>hope.</i>
<i>Victoria, ae, f.</i>	<i>victory.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. *Diei, diērum, diēbus.* 2. *Aciei, aciem, acie.* 3. *Diem, speciem.* 4. *Die, specie.* 5. *Res, spes.* 6. *Rei, spei.* 7. *Victoriae spes.* 8. *Victoriae spe.* 9. *Diei horae.* 10. *Numerus diērum.* 11. *Gloria, cibus; nubes, cantus, facies.* 12. *Gloriae, cibi, nubis, cantus, faciei.* 13. *Gloriam, cibum, nubem, cantum, faciem.* 14. *De victoria, in mare, ad consulem.*

III. Translate into Latin.

1. A day, days. 2. Of the day, of the days. 3. For the day, for the days. 4. The thing, the things. 5. With the thing, with the things. 6. Concerning the thing, concerning the things. 7. Of the thing, of the things. 8. Concerning the battle-array. 9. Wisdom, friend, citizen, fruit, hope. 10. For wisdom, for a citizen, for hope.

¹ The learner will notice that *e* in the ending *ei* is long in *diei*, where it is preceded by a vowel, but short in *rei*, where it is preceded by a consonant. In both instances, however, the *e* belongs to the stem.

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

146. THE adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bōnus*, good: *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies: *bōnus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension, and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

A AND O STEMS.

148. *Bōnus*, good.

SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>bōnūs</i>	<i>bōnā</i>	<i>bōnūm</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bonūm</i>	<i>bonām</i>	<i>bonūm</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>bonē</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonūm</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonō;</i>
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bonōrūm</i>	<i>bonārūm</i>	<i>bonōrūm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bonōs</i>	<i>bonās</i>	<i>bonā</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs.</i>

1. *Bonus* is declined in the *Masc.* like *servus* of Decl. II. (51), in the *Fem.* like *mensa* of Decl. I. (48), and in the *Neut.* like *templum*

of Decl. II. (51). The stems are *bōno* in the Masc. and Neut., and *bōna* in the Fem.

149. *Liber, free.*

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>libēr</i>	<i>libērǎ</i>	<i>libērŭm</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>libērī</i>	<i>libērae</i>	<i>libērī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>libērō</i>	<i>libērae</i>	<i>libērō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>libērŭm</i>	<i>libērŭm</i>	<i>libērŭm</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>libēr</i>	<i>libērǎ</i>	<i>libērŭm</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>libērō</i>	<i>libērǎ</i>	<i>libērō;</i>

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>libērī</i>	<i>libērae</i>	<i>libērǎ</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>libērōrŭm</i>	<i>libērārŭm</i>	<i>libērōrŭm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>libērīs</i>	<i>libērīs</i>	<i>libērīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>libērōs</i>	<i>libērās</i>	<i>libērǎ</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>libērī</i>	<i>libērae</i>	<i>libērǎ</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>libērīs</i>	<i>libērīs</i>	<i>libērīs.</i>

1. **LIBER** is declined in the Masc. like *puer* (51), and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bōnus*.

150. *Aeger, sick.*

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>aegēr</i>	<i>aegrǎ/</i>	<i>aegrŭm</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegrō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aegrŭm</i>	<i>aegrŭm</i>	<i>aegrŭm</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>aeger</i>	<i>aegrǎ</i>	<i>aegrŭm</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegrǎ</i>	<i>aegrō;</i>

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegrǎ</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aegrōrŭm</i>	<i>aegrārŭm</i>	<i>aegrōrŭm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aegrōs</i>	<i>aegrās</i>	<i>aegrǎ</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegrǎ</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs.</i>

1. **AEGER** is declined in the Masc. like *āger* (51), and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bōnus*.

RULE XXXIII. — Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in **GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE**:

*Fortūna caeca est, Fortune is blind.*¹ — Cic. *Verae amicitiae, true friendships.* — Cic. *Māgister optimus, the best teacher.* — Cic.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Verae amicitiae, True friendships.

Verae is an adjective (146) of the First and Second Declensions (147): **STEM, vera** (148, 1). Singular: N. *verus, verā, verum*; G. *veri, verae, veri*; D. *vero, verae, vero*; A. *verum, veram, verum*; V. *vere, verā, verum*; A. *vero, verā, vero*. Plural: N. *veri, verae, vera*; G. *verōrum, verārum, verōrum*; D. *veris, veris, veris*; A. *veros, veras, vera*; V. *veri, verae, vera*; A. *veris, veris, veris*. It is in the Nominative Plural Feminine, and agrees with its noun *amicitiāe*, according to Rule XXXIII: "An Adjective agrees with its Noun in **GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE**."

EXERCISE XII.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Annūlus, i, m.</i>	<i>• ring.</i>
<i>Aureūs, ā, ūm,</i> ²	<i>golden.</i>
<i>Beātūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>happy, blessed.</i>
<i>Bōnūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>good.</i>
<i>Egrēgiūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>distinguished.</i>
<i>Fidūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>faithful.</i>
<i>Grātūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>, acceptable, pleasing.</i>
<i>Magnūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>great.</i>

¹ Here the adjective *caeca* is in the feminine gender, in the singular number, and in the nominative case, to agree with *fortūna*. It is declined like *BONUS*: *caecus, caeca, caecum*.

² The endings *a* and *um* belong respectively to the feminine and to the neuter. Thus *aureus, aurea, aureum*, like *bonus, 148*.

Multūs, ā, ūm,	much, many.
Puellā, ae, f.	girl.
Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm,	beautiful.
Rēginā, ae, f.	queen.
Rēgnūm, i, n.	kingdom.
Vērūs, ā, ūm,	true.
Vitā, ae, f.	life.

II. Translate into English.

1. Amīcus fidus.¹ 2. Amīci fidi. 3. Amīco fido. 4. Amīcum fidum. 5. Amīce fide. 6. Amicōrum fidōrum. 7. Amīcis fidis. 8. Amīcos fidos. 9. Corōnā aureā. 10. Corōnae aureae. 11. Corōnam auream. 12. Corōnā aureā. 13. Coronārum aureārum. 14. Corōnis aureis. 15. Corōnas aureas. 16. Donum gratum. 17. Doni grati. 18. Dono grato. 19. Dona grata. 20. Donōrum gratōrum. 21. Donis gratis. 22. Ager pulcher. 23. Puellā pulchrā. 24. Donum pulchrum. 25. Agri pulchri. 26. Puellae pulchrae. 27. Dona pulchra. 28. Beātā vitā. 29. Aureus annūlus. 30. Aurei annūli. 31. Magnā gloriā. 32. Egregiā victoriā.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. A true² friend. 2. The true² friends. 3. For a true friend. 4. For true friends. 5. Of the true friend. 6. Of true friends. 7. True glory. 8. With true glory. 9. Of true glory. 10. An acceptable word. 11. Acceptable words. 12. With acceptable words. 13. Of acceptable

¹ In Latin the adjective generally follows its noun, as in this example; though sometimes it precedes it, as in English. When emphatic, the adjective is placed before its noun; as, *Verae amicitiae*, true friendships. *Fidus* agrees with *amicus*, according to Rule XXXIII.

² Be sure and put the adjective in the right form to agree with its noun, according to Rule XXXIII.

words. 14. A beautiful book. 15. The beautiful books. 16. With a beautiful book. 17. Of beautiful books. 18. The beautiful queen. 19. The crown of the beautiful queen. 20. The beautiful crown of the queen. 21. A good king, a good queen, a good kingdom. 22. The brothers of the good king.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CONSONANT AND I STEMS.

152. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes : —

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms, one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms; the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form, the same for all genders.

153. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS in this declension have the stem in *i*, and are declined as follows : —

Acer, sharp.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ācēr</i>	<i>ācrīs</i>	<i>ācrē</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrīs</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>acrēm</i>	<i>acrēm</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>acēr</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī;</i>

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>acriūm</i>	<i>acriūm</i>	<i>acriūm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>acrēs, is</i>	<i>acrēs, is</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs.</i>

154. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS are declined as follows : —

Tristis, sad.

Tristior, more sad.

SINGULAR.

<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. tristis</i>	<i>tristē</i>	<i>N. tristior</i>	<i>tristiūs</i>
<i>G. tristis</i>	<i>tristis</i>	<i>G. tristioris</i>	<i>tristiōris</i>
<i>D. tristī</i>	<i>tristī</i>	<i>D. tristiorī</i>	<i>tristiōrī</i>
<i>A. tristēm</i>	<i>tristē</i>	<i>A. tristiorēm</i>	<i>tristiūs</i>
<i>V. tristis</i>	<i>tristē</i>	<i>V. tristior</i>	<i>tristiūs</i>
<i>A. tristī</i>	<i>tristī</i> ;	<i>A. tristiorē (ī)</i>	<i>tristiōrē (ī)</i> ;

PLURAL.

<i>N. tristēs</i>	<i>tristiā</i>	<i>N. tristiorēs</i>	<i>tristiōrā</i>
<i>G. tristium</i>	<i>tristiūm</i>	<i>G. tristiorūm</i>	<i>tristiōrūm</i>
<i>D. tristibus</i>	<i>tristibūs</i>	<i>D. tristioribūs</i>	<i>tristiōribūs</i>
<i>A. tristēs, is</i>	<i>tristiā</i>	<i>A. tristiorēs</i>	<i>tristiōrā</i>
<i>V. tristēs</i>	<i>tristiā</i>	<i>V. tristiorēs</i>	<i>tristiōrā</i>
<i>A. tristibus</i>	<i>tristibūs.</i>	<i>A. tristioribūs</i>	<i>tristiōribūs.</i>

155. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *l* or *r*, and are declined, in the main, like nouns of the same endings.

156. *Audax, audacious.*

Felix, happy.

SINGULAR.

<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. audax</i>	<i>audax</i>	<i>N. felix</i>	<i>felix</i>
<i>G. audacis</i>	<i>audacis</i>	<i>G. felicis</i>	<i>felicis</i>
<i>D. audacī</i>	<i>audacī</i>	<i>D. felici</i>	<i>felici</i>
<i>A. audacēm</i>	<i>audax</i>	<i>A. felicēm</i>	<i>felix</i>
<i>V. audax</i>	<i>audax</i>	<i>V. felix</i>	<i>felix</i>
<i>A. audacī (ē)</i>	<i>audacī (ē)</i> ;	<i>A. felici (ē)</i>	<i>felici (ē)</i> ;

PLURAL.

<i>N. audacēs</i>	<i>audaciā</i>	<i>N. felicēs</i>	<i>feliciā</i>
<i>G. audacium</i>	<i>audaciūm</i>	<i>G. feliciūm</i>	<i>feliciūm</i>
<i>D. audacibus</i>	<i>audacibūs</i>	<i>D. felicibus</i>	<i>felicibūs</i>
<i>A. audacēs (is)</i>	<i>audaciā</i>	<i>A. felicēs (is)</i>	<i>feliciā</i>
<i>V. audacēs</i>	<i>audaciā</i>	<i>V. felicēs</i>	<i>feliciā</i>
<i>A. audacibus</i>	<i>audacibūs.</i>	<i>A. felicibus</i>	<i>felicibūs.</i>

157. Amans, *loving*.Prūdēns, *prudent*.

SINGULAR.

<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. āmans	āmans	N. prūdēns	prūdēns
G. amantīs	amantīs	G. prudentīs	prudentīs
D. amantī	amantī	D. prudentī	prudentī
A. amantēm	amans	A. prudentēm	prudens
V. amans	amans	V. prudens	prudens
A. amantē (ī)	amantē (ī);	A. prudentī (ē)	prudentī (ē);

PLURAL.

N. amantēs	amantiā	N. prudentēs	prudentiā
G. amantiūm	amantiūm	G. prudentiūm	prudentiūm
D. amantibūs	amantibūs	D. prudentibūs	prudentibūs
A. amantēs (is)	amantiā	A. prudentēs (is)	prudentiā
V. amantēs	amantiā	V. prudentēs	prudentiā
A. amantibūs	amantibūs.	A. prudentibūs	prudentibūs.

EXERCISE XIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Acēr, ācris, ācrē,	<i>sharp, severe.</i>
Animāl, ānimālīs, n.	<i>animal.</i>
Brēvis, ē,	<i>short, brief.</i>
Crūdēlis, ē,	<i>cruel.</i>
Dōlōr, dōlōris, m.	<i>pain, grief.</i>
Dux, dūcis, m.	<i>leader.</i>
Fertīlis, ē,	<i>fertile.</i>
Fortīs, ē,	<i>brave.</i>
Nāvālīs, ē,	<i>naval.</i>
Omnīs, ē,	<i>every, all, whole.</i>
Pugnā, ae, f.	<i>battle.</i>
Sāpiens, sāpientīs,	<i>wise.</i>
Singulārīs, ē,	<i>singular, remarkable.</i>
Utilīs, ē,	<i>useful.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Dolor acer. 2. Dolores acres. 3. Lex acris. 4. Legibus acribus. 5. Hostis crudelis. 6. Hostem crudē-

lem. 7. Miles fortis. 8. Virtus militis¹ fortis. 9. Virtute militum¹ fortium. 10. Ager fertilis. 11. In agro fertili. 12. Agros fertiles. 13. In agris fertilibus. 14. Post vitam brevem. 15. Pugnae navales. 16. Post pugnas navales. 17. Singularis virtus. 18. Singulari virtute. 19. Omne animal. 20. Omnia animalia.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. A useful citizen. 2. Of useful citizens. 3. For a useful citizen. 4. For useful citizens. 5. Of a useful citizen. 6. The wise judge. 7. Wise judges. 8. For the wise judge. 9. For wise judges. 10. Brave soldiers. 11. For brave soldiers. 12. A brave soldier. 13. Of the brave soldier. 14. The brave leader. 15. Brave leaders. 16. The word of the brave leader. 17. By the words of the brave leader.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms, called the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative degree: *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*,² high, higher, highest. These forms denote different degrees of the quality expressed by the adjective.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison: —

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON, by endings.

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON, by adverbs.

¹ Genitive, according to Rule XVI.

² Each of these forms of the adjective is declined. Thus *altus* and *altissimus* are declined like *bonus*, 148: *altus*, *a*, *um*; *alti*, *ae*, *i*, etc.; *altissimus*, *a*, *um*; *altissimae*, *ae*, *i*, etc. *Altior* is declined like *tristior*, 154: *altior*, *altius*; *altioris*, etc.

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:—

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
iōr,	iōr,	iūs.	issīmūs,	issīmā,	issīmūm:

Altus, altior, altissimus: *high, higher, highest.*

lēvis, levior, levissimus: *light, lighter, lightest.*

1. VOWEL STEMS lose their final vowel: *alto, altior, altissimus.*

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs, *māgis*, more, and *maxīme*, most, to the positive:—

Arduus, māgis arduus, maxīme arduus,

Arduous, more arduous, most arduous.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Orātōr clāriōr, *A more renowned orator.*

Clarior is an adjective (146) in the Comparative degree (160, 162), from the positive *clarus*. Positive, *clārus*; STEM, *clāro*; Comparative, *clarior*; Superlative, *clarissimus*. *Clarior* is an adjective of the Third Declension, declined like *tristior* (154). Singular: N. *clarior, clarius*; G. *clariōris, clariōris*, etc.¹ It is in the Nominative Singular Masculine, and agrees with its noun *orātōr*, according to Rule XXXIII.²

EXERCISE XIV.

I. Vocabulary.

Altūs, ā, ūm,	<i>high, lofty.</i>
Clārūs, ā, ūm,	<i>distinguished, renowned.</i>
Intēr, prep. with acc.	<i>among, in the midst of.</i>
Mons, montīs, m.	<i>mountain.</i>

¹ Decline through all the cases of both numbers.

² Give the Rule.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Orātor clarus. 2. Orātor clarior.¹ 3. Orātor clarissimus. 4. Oratōres clari. 5. Oratōres clariōres.¹ 6. Oratōres clarissimi. 7. Beāta vita. 8. Beatior vita. 9. Beatissima vita. 10. Donum gratum. 11. Donum gratius. 12. Donum gratissimum. 13. Dona grata. 14. Dona gratiōra. 15. Dona gratissima. 16. Milites fortissimi. 17. Liber utilis. 18. Libri utiliōres. 19. Libris utilissimis. 20. Mons altus. 21. Montes altiōres.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A fertile field. 2. A more fertile field. 3. The most fertile field. 4. Fertile fields. 5. More fertile fields. 6. A useful life. 7. A more useful life. 8. The most useful life. 9. Useful lives. 10. More useful lives. 11. The most useful lives. 12. A pleasing song. 13. A more pleasing song. 14. The most pleasing song.

NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes: —

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS: ² *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two.
2. ORDINAL NUMBERS: ² *primus*, first; *secundus*, second.
3. DISTRIBUTIVES: ² *singūli*, one by one; *bini*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

¹ Declined like *tristior*, 154. Comparatives and superlatives, as well as positives, must agree with their nouns, according to Rule XXXIII, p. 34.

² *Cardinals* denote simply the *number* of objects: *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two. *Ordinals* denote the *place* of an object in a *series*: *primus*, first; *secundus*, second. *Distributives* denote the *number* of objects taken at a time: *singūli*, one by one; *bini*, two by two.

174. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
1. ūnus, unā, unūm,	primūs, <i>first</i> ,	singŭlī, <i>one by one</i> .
2. duō, duae, duō,	secundūs, <i>second</i> ,	bini, <i>two by two</i> .
3. trēs, triā,	tertiūs, <i>third</i> ,	terni (trini).
4. quattuor,	quartūs, <i>fourth</i> ,	quaterni.
5. quinquē,	quintūs, <i>fifth</i> ,	quini.
6. sex,	sextūs,	seni.
7. septēm,	septimūs,	septēni.
8. octō,	octāvūs,	octōni.
9. novēm,	nōnūs,	nōvēni.
10. dēcēm,	dēcimūs,	dēni.
11. undēcim,	undēcimūs,	undēni.
12. duōdēcim,	duōdēcimūs,	duōdēni.
13. trēdēcim, or dēcēm et trēs,	tertiūs dēcimūs,	terni dēni.
20. viginti,	vicēsīmūs,	vicēni.
21. { viginti ūnus,	vicēsīmūs primūs,	vicēni singŭlī.
{ ūnus et viginti,	ūnus et vicēsīmūs,	singŭlī et vicēni.
30. trigintā,	tricēsīmūs,	tricēni.
40. quadrāgintā,	quadrāgēsīmūs,	quadrāgēni.
50. quinquāgintā,	quinquāgēsīmūs,	quinquāgēni.
100. centūm,	centēsīmūs,	centēni.
200. dūcentī, ac, ā,	dūcentēsīmūs,	dūcēni.
1000. millē,	millēsīmūs,	singŭlā milliā.

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

175. The first three cardinals are declined as follows : —

Unus, *one*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. ūnus	unā	unūm	ūni	ūnae	ūnā	
G. uniūs	uniūs	uniūs	unōrūm	unārum	unōrūm	
D. uni	uni	uni	unis	unis	unis	
A. unūm	unām	unūm	unōs	unās	unā	
V. unē	unā	unūm	uni	unae	unā	
A. unō	unā	unō;	unis	unis	unis.	

Duo, *two*.Tres, *three*.

N. duō	duae	duō	trēs, <i>m. and f.</i>	triā, <i>n.</i>
G. duōrūm	duārum	duōrūm	triūm	triūm
D. duōbūs	duābūs	duōbūs	tribūs	tribūs
A. duōs, duō	duās	duō	trēs, trīs	triā
V. duō	duae	duō	trēs	triā
A. duōbus	duābūs	duōbūs.	tribūs	tribūs.

176. The cardinals from *quattuor* to *centum* are indeclinable.

177. Hundreds, *dūcenti*, *trēcenti*, etc., are declined like the plural of *bōnus*: *ducenti*, *ae*, *a*.

EXERCISE XV.

I. Vocabulary.

Annūs, i, m.	year.
Classis, classis, f.	fleet.
Fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f.	fortitude, bravery.
Impēriū, ii, n.	reign, power.
Nāvis, nāvis, f.	ship.
Proeliū, ii, n.	battle.
Vīr, vīri, m.	man, hero.

II. Translate into English.

1. Unus¹ liber. 2. Duo¹ libri. 3. Liber primus.¹ 4. Liber secundus. 5. Tres libri. 6. Tertius liber. 7. Tria bella. 8. Post tria bella. 9. Post tertium bellum. 10. Ante quartum bellum. 11. Quattuor² anni. 12. Post bellum quinque annōrum. 13. Decem² dies. 14. Decimus dies.³ 15. Decem horae. 16. Decima hora. 17. Decem proelia. 18. Decimum proelium. 19. Horā diēi decimā.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Five friends. 2. Of five friends. 3. The fifth year. 4. The fifth day. 5. The fifth present. 6. With five presents. 7. Eight books. 8. With eight books. 9. The eighth book. 10. Before the eighth book. 11. The bravery of two soldiers. 12. By the bravery of two soldiers.

¹ Numeral adjectives agree with their nouns, like other adjectives.

² The indeclinable numeral adjectives (176) may be used without change of form with nouns of any gender and in any case.

³ *Dies*, it will be remembered, is generally masculine.

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

182. THE PRONOUN is the part of speech which supplies the place of nouns: *ĕgō*, I; *tū*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:—

1. Personal Pronouns: *tū*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hīc*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *quī*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quīs*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *āliquīs*, some one.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are,—

Ego, I. Tu, thou. Sui, of himself, etc.¹

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i> ĕgō	<i>tū</i>	
<i>Gen.</i> mei	<i>tuī</i>	<i>sui</i>
<i>Dat.</i> mihi	<i>tibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>
<i>Acc.</i> mē	<i>tē</i>	<i>sē</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>tū</i>	
<i>Abl.</i> mē ;	<i>tē ;</i>	<i>sē ;</i>

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> nōs	<i>vōs</i>	
<i>Gen.</i> nostrūm } nostrī }	<i>vestrūm</i> } vestrī }	<i>sui</i>
<i>Dat.</i> nōbis	<i>vōbis</i>	<i>sibi</i>
<i>Acc.</i> nōs	<i>vōs</i>	<i>sē</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>vōs</i>	
<i>Abl.</i> nōbis.	<i>vōbis.</i>	<i>sē.</i>

4. Personal Pronouns are also called *Substantive* pronouns, because they are always used as substantives.

¹ *Of himself, herself, itself.* The Nominative is not used.

5. *Sui*, from its reflexive signification, of *himself*, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From Personal Pronouns are formed the *Possessives*:—

meūs, ā, ūm, *my*; noster, trā, trūm, *our*;
tuus, a, um, *thy, your*; vester, tra, trum, *your*;
suus, a, um, *his, her, its*; suus, a, um, *their*.

1. Possessives are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions; but *meus* has in the Vocative Singular, Masculine, generally *mi*, sometimes *meus*.

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are,—

Hic, istē, illē, is, ipsē, idem.

They are declined as follows,—

I. Hic, *this*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. hic	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
G. hujūs	hujūs	hujūs	hōrūm	hārūm	hōrūm
D. huic	huic	huic	his	his	his
A. hunc	hanc	hōc ¹	hōs	hās	haec
A. hōc	hāc	hōc;	his	his	his.

II. Istē, *that, that of yours*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. istē	istā	istūd	ieti	istae	istā
G. istiūs	istiūs	istiūs	istōrūm	istārūm	istōrūm
D. isti	isti	isti	istis	istis	istis
A. istūm	istām	istūd ¹	istōs	istās	istā
A. istō	istā	istō;	istis	istis	istis.

III. Illē, *he or that*, is declined like *istē*.

¹ The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

IV. *Is, he, this, that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>is</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>ei, ii</i>	<i>cae</i>	<i>eā</i>
G. <i>ejūs</i>	<i>ejūs</i>	<i>ejūs</i>	<i>eōrūm</i>	<i>eārūm</i>	<i>eōrūm</i>
D. <i>ei</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>
A. <i>eūm</i>	<i>eām</i>	<i>id</i> ¹	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>eā</i>
A. <i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō;</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs.</i>

V. *Ipsē, self, he.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>ipsē</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsūm</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsā</i>
G. <i>ipsiūs</i>	<i>ipsiūs</i>	<i>ipsiūs</i>	<i>ipsōrūm</i>	<i>ipsārūm</i>	<i>ipsōrūm</i>
D. <i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>
A. <i>ipsūm</i>	<i>ipsām</i>	<i>ipsūm</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsā</i>
A. <i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō;</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis.</i>

VI. *Idem, the same.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>idēm</i> ²	<i>eādēm</i>	<i>idēm</i>	{ <i>eidēm</i>	<i>eaedēm</i>	<i>eādēm</i>
G. <i>ejusdēm</i>	<i>ejusdēm</i>	<i>ejusdēm</i>	{ <i>iidēm</i>		
D. <i>eidēm</i>	<i>eidēm</i>	<i>eidēm</i>	<i>eōrundēm</i>	<i>eārundēm</i>	<i>eōrundēm</i>
A. <i>eundēm</i>	<i>eandēm</i>	<i>idēm</i>	{ <i>eisdēm</i>	<i>eisdēm</i>	<i>eisdēm</i>
A. <i>eōdēm</i>	<i>eādēm</i>	<i>eōdēm;</i>	{ <i>iisdēm</i>	<i>iisdēm</i>	<i>iisdēm</i>
			<i>eosdēm</i>	<i>easdēm</i>	<i>eādēm</i>
			{ <i>eisdēm</i>	<i>eisdēm</i>	<i>eisdēm</i>
			{ <i>iisdēm</i>	<i>iisdēm</i>	<i>iisdēm.</i>

IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *qui*, who, so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows : —

¹ The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

² *Idem*, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *isdēm* to *idēm*, and *iddēm* to *idēm*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dēm*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
G. cuius	cuius	cuius	quorū	quarū	quorū
D. cui	cui	cui	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs
A. quē	quā	quod	quos	quās	quae
A. quō	quā	quō;	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs.

V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are, —

Quis and *quī* with their compounds.

I. *Quis, who, which, what?*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. quis	quae	quid	qui	quae	quae
G. cuius	cuius	cuius	quorū	quarū	quorū
D. cui	cui	cui	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs
A. quē	quā	quid	quos	quās	quae
A. quō	quā	quō;	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs.

II. *Qui, which, what?* is declined like the relative *qui*.

VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are, —

Quis and *quī*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, any one, and *quī*, any one, any, are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *quī*. But

1. After *si*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *nūm*, the Feminine Singular and Neuter Plural have *quae* or *quā*: *si quae*, *si quā*.

EXERCISE XVI.

I. Vocabulary.

Consiliūm, ii, n.	design, plan.
Epistolā, ae, f.	letter.

<i>Ex, prep. with abl.</i>	<i>from.</i>
<i>Insulā, ae, f.</i>	<i>island.</i>
<i>Pārens, pārentis, m. and f.</i>	<i>parent.</i>
<i>Pars, partis, f.</i>	<i>part, portion.</i>
<i>Pātriā, ae, f.</i>	<i>country, native country.</i>
<i>Praeclārūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>distinguished.</i>
<i>Prātūm, ī, n.</i>	<i>meadow.</i>
<i>Prō, prep. with abl.</i>	<i>for, in behalf of.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Mihi, tibi, sibi. 2. Ad me,¹ ad te. 3. Contra nos, contra se. 4. Ante vos, ante nos. 5. Pro vobis.¹ 6. Meā² vitā. 7. Patriā tuā. 8. Pro patriā tuā.² 9. Contra patriam tuam. 10. Nostra consilia. 11. Nostris² consiliis. 12. Vestri patres. 13. In nostrā patriā. 14. Hic² puer, hi puēri. 15. Haec corōnā, hae corōnae. 16. Hoc donum, haec dona. 17. Haec urbs praeclārā. 18. Ex hac vitā. 19. Illius libri. 20. In eā pugnā. 21. In eōdem prato. 22. Quae² urbs?

III. Translate into Latin.

1. We, you. 2. You, me, himself. 3. For you, for me, for himself. 4. Of himself, of you. 5. Against you, against me. 6. My book, your book, his book. 7. My books, your books, his books. 8. Our parents, your parents, their parents. 9. This letter, that letter. 10. These letters, those letters. 11. This city, that city. 12. These cities, those cities. 13. After that victory. 14. The same words. 15. With the same words.

¹ See 184, 4. Substantive pronouns are used in the several cases like nouns, and are parsed by the same rules.

² The *Possessive*, the *Demonstrative*, and the *Interrogative* Pronouns, in this exercise, are all used as *adjectives*, and agree with their nouns, like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. 438, p. 34.

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

192. VERBS in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *lĕgit*, he reads.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes:—

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS, which admit a direct object of their action: *servum*¹ *verbĕrat*, he beats the slave.

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS, which do not admit such an object: *puer currit*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice*, *Mood*, *Tense*, *Number*, and *Person*.

I. VOICES.

195. There are two Voices: ²—

I. THE ACTIVE VOICE, which represents the subject as acting or existing: *pāter filium amat*, the father loves his son; *est*, he is.

II. THE PASSIVE VOICE, which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing: *filius a patre amātur*, the son is loved by his father.

II. MOODS.

196. Moods³ are either Definite or Indefinite,—

I. THE DEFINITE or FINITE MOODS make up the finite verb. They are,—

1. THE INDICATIVE MOOD, which either asserts some—

¹ Here *servum*, the slave, is the direct object of the action denoted by the verb *beats*: *beats* (what?) *the slave*.

² *Voice* shows whether the subject *acts*, or is *acted upon*.

³ *Mood*, or *Mode*, means *manner*, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several moods.

thing as a *fact*, or inquires after the fact: *lĕgit*, he is reading; *lĕgitne*, is he reading?

2. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, which expresses, not an actual fact, but a *conception*, often rendered by *may*, *let*, etc.: *lĕgat*, he may read, let him read.

3. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty*: *lĕge*, read thou.

II. THE INDEFINITE MOODS express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives. They are, —

1. THE INFINITIVE, which, like the English infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb, without any necessary reference to person or number: *lĕgĕre*, to read.

2. THE GERUND, which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in ING: *amandi*, of loving; *amandi causā*, for the sake of loving.

3. THE SUPINE, which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular*: *amātum*, to love, for loving; *amātu*, to be loved, in loving.

4. THE PARTICIPLE, which, like the English participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and the Future; *amans*, loving; *amaturus*, about to love; and two in the Passive, the Perfect, *amatus*, loved, and the Gerundive,¹ *amandus*, deserving to be loved.

III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses: —

I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION: —

1. Present: *amō*, I love.

2. Imperfect: *amābam*, I was loving.

3. Future: *amābō*, I shall love.

¹ Also called the *Future Passive Participle*.

II. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION: —

1. Perfect: *āmāvi*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect: *āmāvēṛām*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect: *āmāvēṛē*, I shall have loved.

199. NUMBERS AND PERSONS. — There are two numbers, SINGULAR and PLURAL,¹ and three persons, FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.¹

CONJUGATION.

200. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
āre,	ēre,	ēre,	ire.

201. STEM AND PRINCIPAL PARTS. — The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine are called, from their importance, the *Principal Parts* of the verb: They are all formed, by means of certain endings, from one common base, called the *Stem*.

202. THE ENTIRE CONJUGATION of any regular verb may be readily formed from the Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.²

203. SUM, *I am*, is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly, its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

¹ As in nouns. See 44.

² In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the Principal Parts and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

204. *Sūm, I am.* — STEMS, *ēs, fu.*¹

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
<i>sūm,</i>	<i>essē,</i>	<i>fuī,</i>	—. ²

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
<i>sūm,</i>	<i>I am,</i>	<i>sūmūs,</i>	<i>we are,</i>
<i>ēs,</i>	<i>thou art,³</i>	<i>estis,</i>	<i>you are,</i>
<i>est,</i>	<i>he is ;</i>	<i>sunt,</i>	<i>they are.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I was.

<i>ērām,</i>	<i>I was,</i>	<i>ērāmūs,</i>	<i>we were,</i>
<i>erās,</i>	<i>thou wast,</i>	<i>erātis,</i>	<i>you were,</i>
<i>erāt,</i>	<i>he was ;</i>	<i>erant,</i>	<i>they were.</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will be.

<i>ērō,</i>	<i>I shall be,</i>	<i>ērīmūs,</i>	<i>we shall be,</i>
<i>eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt be,</i>	<i>eritis,</i>	<i>you will be,</i>
<i>erit,</i>	<i>he will be ;</i>	<i>erunt,</i>	<i>they will be.</i>

PERFECT.

I have been, was.

<i>fuī,</i>	<i>I have been,</i>	<i>fuīmūs,</i>	<i>we have been,</i>
<i>fuisti,</i>	<i>thou hast been,</i>	<i>fuistis,</i>	<i>you have been,</i>
<i>fuīt,</i>	<i>he has been ;</i>	<i>fuērunt,</i>	<i>they have been.</i>
		<i>fuērē,</i>	

PLUPERFECT.

I had been.

<i>fuērām,</i>	<i>I had been,</i>	<i>fuērāmūs,</i>	<i>we had been,</i>
<i>fuērās,</i>	<i>thou hadst been,</i>	<i>fuērātis,</i>	<i>you had been,</i>
<i>fuērāt,</i>	<i>he had been ;</i>	<i>fuērant,</i>	<i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been.

<i>fuērō,</i>	<i>I shall have been,</i>	<i>fuērīmūs,</i>	<i>we shall have been,</i>
<i>fuērīs,</i>	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>	<i>fuērītis,</i>	<i>you will have been.</i>
<i>fuērīt,</i>	<i>he will have been ;</i>	<i>fuērint,</i>	<i>they will have been.</i>

¹ *Sum* has two verb-stems, while regular verbs have only one.² The supine is wanting in this verb.³ Or, *you are* : *thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may be.*¹

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
ēm,	<i>I may be,</i>	ēmūs,	<i>we may be,</i>
ēs,	<i>thou mayest be,</i>	ētis,	<i>you may be,</i>
ēt,	<i>he may be ;</i>	sint,	<i>they may be.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should be.

essēm,	<i>I might be,</i>	essēmūs,	<i>we might be,</i>
essēs,	<i>thou mightest be,</i>	essētis,	<i>you might be,</i>
essēt,	<i>he might be ;</i>	essent,	<i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT.

I may have been.

fuērīm,	<i>I may have been,</i>	fuērīmūs,	<i>we may have been,</i>
fuērīs,	<i>thou mayest have been,</i>	fuērītis,	<i>you may have been,</i>
fuērīt,	<i>he may have been ;</i>	fuērint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have been.

fuissēm,	<i>I might have been,</i>	fuissēmūs,	<i>we might have been,</i>
fuissēs,	<i>thou mightest have been,</i>	fuissētis,	<i>you might have been,</i>
fuissēt,	<i>he might have been ;</i>	fuissent,	<i>they might have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ēs,	<i>be thou,</i>	estē,	<i>be ye.</i>
FUT. estō,	<i>thou shalt be,</i> ²	estōtē,	<i>ye shall be,</i>
estō,	<i>he shall be ;</i>	suntō,	<i>they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. essē,	<i>to be.</i>		
PERF. fuissē,	<i>to have been.</i>		
FUT. futūrus ³ essē,	<i>to be about to be.</i>	FUT. futūrus, ³	<i>about to be.</i>

¹ The Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*: sit, *he may be, may he be, let him be.*

² The Future is sometimes best rendered like the Present, or with *let*: esto, *thou shalt be, or be thou ; suntō, they shall be, or let them be.*

³ *Futūrus* is declined like *bonus* ; N. *futūrus*, a, um, G. *futūri*, ae, i ; so in the Infinitive : *futūrus*, a, um *esse*:

RULE XXXV.—Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite¹ Verb agrees with its Subject² in NUMBER and PERSON:

*Deus mundum aedificāvit,*³ *God made the world.* Cic. *Ego rēges ejēci, vos tȳrannos intrōdūcītis,* *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES.—These agree with the subject, according to Rule XXXIII. page 32:

*Thēbāni accūsāti sunt,*⁴ *The Thebans were accused.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The subject is generally omitted—

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, or can be readily supplied from the context:

*Discipūlos mōneo,*⁵ *ut stūdia āment,*⁶ *I instruct pupils to love^a their studies.* Quint.

¹ See 196, I.

² With the Active Voice of a Transitive Verb, the *Subject* represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *performs* the action; as, *Deus* in the first example, *God made*: but, with the Passive Voice, it represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *receives* the action, i.e. *is acted upon*, as, *Thēbāni*, 460, 1: *the Thebans were accused*.

³ *Aedificāvit* is in the Third Person and in the Singular Number, because its subject *deus* is in that person and number. *Ejēci* is in the First Person Singular, to agree with its subject *ego*; and *introducītis* in the Second Person Plural, to agree with its subject *vos*.

⁴ The verb *accūsāti sunt* is in the Third Person Plural, to agree with its subject *Thēbāni*, according to Rule XXXV.; but the participle *accūsāti*, which is one element of the verb, is in the Nominative Plural Masculine, to agree with its noun *Thēbāni*, according to Rule XXXIII.

⁵ The subject of *moneo* is *ego*. It is omitted, because it is a Personal Pronoun, and is, accordingly, fully implied in the verb, as the ending *eo* shows, as we shall soon see, that the subject cannot be *you, he, or they*, but must be *I*.

Ut—ament means literally *that they may love*. The subject of *ament* is the pronoun *ii*, they, referring to *discipūlos*. It is omitted, partly because it is implied in the ending *ent*, but more especially because it can be so readily supplied from *discipūlos*, which shows *who* are here meant by *they*.

⁶ *To love*, or, more literally, *that they may love*.

The Pronoun may be expressed for emphasis or contrast, as in the second example under the rule.

I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING VERBS.

In parsing a verb,

1. Tell whether it is transitive or intransitive (193), name the Conjugation to which it belongs, give the Present Indicative Active and the Stem (201).
2. Give the Principal Parts (201), and inflect the tense in which the given form is found.¹
3. Give the voice, mood, tense, number, and person.
4. Name the subject, and give the Rule for agreement.

MODELS FOR PARSING THE VERB SUM.

1. *Sum with Subject.*

Nōs² ērāmūs, *We were.*

Erāmūs is an intransitive irregular³ verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui, —*⁴. Inflection of tense (Imperfect Indicative): *eram, eras, erat, erāmūs, erātis, erant*. The form *erāmūs* is found in the Indicative mood, Imperfect tense, First person, Plural number, and agrees with its subject *nos*, according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

2. *Sum without Subject.*⁵

Fui, *I have been.*

Fui is an intransitive irregular verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui*. Inflection of tense (Perfect Indicative): *fui, fuisti,*

¹ That is, if the form occurs in a given tense of the Indicative, give the several forms for the different persons and numbers in that tense and mood. The teacher may also find it convenient to require the synopsis of the mood till the required tense is found.

² *Nōs* is the Subject. With an intransitive verb, the Subject represents the person (or thing) who is in the condition, or state, denoted by the verb.

³ Hence it does not belong to either of the regular conjugations.

⁴ The *Supine* is wanting.

⁵ That is, without any subject expressed.

fuit; *fuimus*, *fuistis*, *fuērunt*, or *fuēre*. The form *fui* is found in the Indicative mood, *Perfect tense*, *First person*, *Singular*, number, and agrees with its subject *ego* omitted (though fully implied * in the ending *i* of *fui*), according to Rule XXXV.

EXERCISE XVII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Sum, sumus, sunt.² 2. Es, est, estis. 3. Eram, erāmus.² 4. Erat, erant. 5. Eris, eritis.² 6. Erit, erunt. 7. Fui, fuēram, fuēro. 8. Fuimus, fuerāmus, fuerimus. 9. Fuisti, fuistis. 10. Fuit, fuērunt. 11. Fuērat, fuērant. 12. Fuērit, fuērint. 13. Sim, simus. 14. Sit, sint. 15. Essem, essēmus. 16. Esset, essent. 17. Fuērim, fuisset. 18. Fuerimus, fuissēmus. 19. Fuērit, fuērint. 20. Fuisset, fuissent. 21. Es, este.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He³ is, they³ are. 2. He has been, they have been. 3. He will be, they will be. 4. He was, they were. 5. He will have been, they will have been. 6. He had been, they had been. 7. I³ was, you were. 8. We have been, you have been. 9. You may be, they may be. 10. He would be, they would be. 11. I might have been, we might have been.

¹ See Rule XXXV., 2, together with the note.

² In parsing the forms contained in this Exercise, observe the second Model just given. If the verb is of the first person, supply, as subject, the personal pronoun (184) of the first person; i.e., *ego* for the singular, and *nos* for the plural. If the verb is of the second person, supply the personal pronoun of the second person; i.e., *tu* for the singular, and *vos* for the plural. If the verb is of the third person, supply the demonstrative pronoun *is* (186) for the singular, and *ii* for the plural, as the personal pronoun *sui* is not used in the Nominative: hence, *ego sum*, *nos sumus*, *ii sunt*.

³ The English pronouns in this Exercise are not to be rendered by the corresponding Latin pronouns, as the latter may be implied in the ending of the verb, as in the Latin forms above: hence, *he is* = *est*.

SUM WITH SUBJECT AND ADJECTIVE.

RULE III.— Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite¹ Verb is put in the Nominative :

*Servius*² *regnāvit*, *Servius reigned*. Liv. *Pātent portae*, *The gates are open*. Cic. *Rex vicit*, *The king conquered*. Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively :

Ego rēges ejēci, *I have banished kings*. Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. See 460, 2 ; page 54.

MODEL FOR PARSING SUBJECTS.

Rex vicit, *The king conquered*.

Rex is a noun (39) of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (47) ; of Class I., as its stem ends in a consonant ($x = g-s$, of which *s* is the ending, while *g* belongs to the stem. See 56) ; STEM, *reg*. Singular: *rex*, *regis*, *regi*, *regem*, *rex*, *rege*. Plural: *reges*, *regum*, *regibus*, *reges*, *reges*, *regibus*. It is of the Masculine gender, by 42, I. 1. ; is in the Nominative Singular ; and is the subject of *vicit*, according to Rule III. : “ The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative.”

EXERCISE XVIII.

I. *Vocabulary*.

<i>Cātō</i> , <i>Cātōnis</i> , <i>m</i> .	<i>Cato</i> , a distinguished Roman.
<i>Crūdūs</i> , <i>ā</i> , <i>ūm</i> ,	<i>unripe</i> .
<i>Diligens</i> , <i>Diligentis</i> ,	<i>diligent</i> .
<i>Discipulūs</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>m</i> .	<i>pupil</i> .

¹ See 196, I.

² In these examples, the subjects are *Servius*, *portae*, and *rex*.

Germāniā, ae, f.	Germany.
Jūcundūs, ā, ūm.	pleasant, delightful.
Laudābilis, ē.	praiseworthy, laudable.
Mātūrūs, ā, ūm.	ripe.
Pōmum, i, n.	fruit.

II. Translate into English.

1. Pax¹ jucunda² est.³ 2. Pax jucunda erit. 3. Vita brevis est. 4. Cato bonus fuit. 5. Cives boni fuērunt. 6. Virtus laudabilis est. 7. Libri utiles sunt. 8. Illi libri utiles erunt. 9. Ille liber utilis fuērat. 10. Utilis⁴ fuisti. 11. Utiles fuistis. 12. Germania fertilis est. 13. Agri fertiles fuērunt. 14. Pomum crudum est. 15. Poma cruda sunt. 16. Poma mātūra erunt. 17. Miles fortis est. 18. Milites fortes sunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The pupil is diligent.⁵ 2. The pupils were diligent. 3. The boy is good. 4. He will be happy. 5. Good boys are happy. 6. You may be happy. 7. We might have been happy. 8. This soldier will be useful. 9. These soldiers have been useful. 10. Brave soldiers are useful. 11. You will be useful. 12. Let us be useful.

¹ Pax is the subject of *est*, and is therefore in the Nominative, according to Rule III.

² Jucunda is an adjective in the Nominative Singular Feminine, to agree with its noun *pax*, according to Rule XXXIII., page 34.

³ Est is a verb in the Indicative mood, Present tense, Third person, Singular number, and agrees with its subject *pax*, according to Rule XXXV., page 54.

⁴ Utilis agrees with the omitted subject *tu*, implied in the ending of the verb.

⁵ In translating English into Latin, the pupil is expected, in the arrangement of words, to imitate the order followed in the Latin Exercises. He will observe that the subject stands first, and the verb last. But sometimes the verb precedes one or more words in the sentence. Thus the sentence, *Pax jucunda est*, might be *Pax est jucunda*.

SUM WITH PREDICATE NOUN.

RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.

362. A Predicate Noun¹ denoting the same person or thing as its subject agrees with it in CASE:

Ego sum nuntius,¹ *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est declārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

MODEL FOR PARSING PREDICATE NOUNS.

Egō sūm nuntiūš, *I am a messenger.*

Nuntius is a noun (39) of the Second Declension, as it has i in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *nuntio*. Singular; *nuntius*, *nuntii*, *nuntio*, *nuntium*, *nuntie*, *nuntio*. Plural; *nuntii*, *nuntiorum*, *nuntius*, *nuntios*, *nuntii*, *nuntius*. It is of the Masculine Gender by 51; is in the Nominative Singular, and, as a Predicate Noun, agrees in case with its subject *ego*, according to Rule I.: "A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE."

346. I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion:

Miltiades accūsātus est, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question:

Quis non paupertātem extimescit, *Who does not fear poverty?* Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word, — either an interrogative pronoun,

¹ Every sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.

2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject.

Thus, in the first example under the Rule, *ego*, I, is the *subject*, and *sum nuntius* is the *predicate*. When the predicate thus consists of a *noun* with the verb *sum*, or of a *noun* with a passive verb, the *noun* thus used is called a *predicate noun*. Accordingly, *nuntius* in the first example, and *rex* in the second, are *predicate nouns*.

adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne*, *nonne*, *num* :

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information : *Scribitne*, Is he writing ? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes* : *Nonne scribit*, Is he not writing ?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no* : *Num scribit*, Is he writing ?

EXERCISE XIX.

I. Vocabulary.

Ancus, i, m.	Añcus, Roman king.
Conditör, conditöris, m.	founder.
Dēmsthēnēs, is, m.	Demosthenes, Athenian orator.
Ebriētās, ebriētātis, f.	drunkenness.
Graecus, ā, ūm,	Greek, Grecian.
Graecus, i, m.	Greek, a Greek.
Insāniā, ae, f.	insanity, madness.
Inventör, inventöris, m.	inventor.
Mätär, mätäris, f.	mother.
Mundus, i, m.	world, universe.
Nonnē, interrog. part.	expects answer yes.
Nūm, interrog. part.	expects answer no.
Philösöphiā, ae, f.	philosophy.
Römā, ae, f.	Rome.
Römānūs, ā, ūm,	Roman.
Römānūs, i, m.	Roman, a Roman.
Römülüs, i, m.	Romulus, the founder of Rome.
Scipiö, Scipiönis, m.	Scipio, Roman general.

II. Translate into English.^{1*}

1. Ancus² fuit³ rex⁴. 2. Nonne⁵ Romulus rex fuerat?
3. Romulus rex fuerat. 4. Quis conditor Romae⁶ fuit?
5. Romulus conditor Romae fuit. 6. Ebrietas est insania.
7. Patria⁷ est parens omnium nostrum.⁸ 8. Graeci⁷ multarum artium⁸ inventores erant. 9. Demosthenes orator fuit.

* For Notes to the references on this page, see page 61.

10. Num hic puer orātor erit? 11. Ille puer orātor sit.
12. Philosophia est mater artium. 13. Cicero clarissimus⁹
orātor fuit. 14. Cantus luscinae jucundissimus⁹ est.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Who¹⁰ was the king? ¹¹ 2. Was not¹² Romulus king? ¹¹
3. Romulus was king. 4. Who was the leader of the
Romans? 5. Was not¹² Scipio the leader of the Romans?
6. Scipio was the leader of the Romans. 7. Your brother
is an orator. 8. This boy is my brother. 9. These boys
will be diligent pupils. 10. These pupils will be diligent.

¹ In preparing the longer and more difficult sentences in this and in the subsequent exercises, it is recommended that the pupil should follow the Suggestions which are inserted in this volume, page 143, and which are intended to aid him in discerning the *process* by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence.

² See Rule III. page 57.

³ See Rule XXXV. page 54. The verb sometimes precedes the Predicate Noun, as in this sentence; and sometimes follows it, as in several of the following sentences.

⁴ *Rex* is a *Predicate Noun*, denoting the same person as its subject *Ancus*, and is therefore in the Nominative, to agree with that subject in *case*, according to Rule I. page 59.

⁵ See 346, II. 1 above.

⁶ Genitive, according to Rule XVI. page 21.

⁷ In this sentence, before turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, notice carefully the endings of the several words in accordance with Suggestion IV. What parts of speech do you find? What cases? What mood, tense, number, and person?

In accordance with Suggestion V., what order will you follow in looking out the words in the Vocabulary?

⁸ *Artium* depends upon *inventores*.

⁹ In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *clarissimus* and *jucundissimus* (162)?

¹⁰ See 188.

¹¹ See Rule I.

¹² *Nonne*. See 346 II. 1.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

205. Amō, *I love.* — STEM, *āma.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
amō,	amāre,	amāvī,	amātum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I love, am loving, do love.

SINGULAR.

amō,	<i>I love,</i>
amās,	<i>thou lovest,</i>
amāt,	<i>he loves ;</i>

PLURAL.

amāmūs,	<i>we love,</i>
amātis,	<i>you love,</i>
amant,	<i>they love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I loved, was loving, did love.

amābam,	<i>I was loving,</i>
amābās,	<i>thou wast loving,</i>
amābat,	<i>he was loving ;</i>

amābāmūs,	<i>we were loving,</i>
amābātis,	<i>you were loving,</i>
amābant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will love.

amābō,	<i>I shall love,</i>
amābis,	<i>thou wilt love,</i>
amābit,	<i>he will love ;</i>

amābimūs,	<i>we shall love,</i>
amābitis,	<i>you will love,</i>
amābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

PERFECT.

I loved, have loved.

amāvī,	<i>I have loved,</i>
amāvisti,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>
amāvit,	<i>he has loved ;</i>

amāvimūs,	<i>we have loved,</i>
amāvistis,	<i>you have loved,</i>
amāverunt, ēre,	<i>they have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I had loved.

amāverām,	<i>I had loved,</i>
amāverās,	<i>thou hadst loved,</i>
amāverāt,	<i>he had loved ;</i>

amāverāmūs,	<i>we had loved,</i>
amāverātis,	<i>you had loved,</i>
amāverant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have loved.

amāverō,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
amāveris,	<i>thou wilt have loved,</i>
amāverit,	<i>he will have loved ;</i>

amāverimūs,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
amāveritis,	<i>you will have loved,</i>
amāverint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may love.

SINGULAR.

āmēm,	<i>I may love,</i>
āmēs,	<i>thou mayst love,</i>
āmēt,	<i>he may love;</i>

PLURAL.

āmēmūs,	<i>we may love,</i>
āmētīs,	<i>you may love,</i>
āment,	<i>they may love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should love.

āmārēm,	<i>I might love,</i>
āmārēs,	<i>thou mightst love,</i>
āmārēt,	<i>he might love;</i>

āmārēmūs,	<i>we might love,</i>
āmārētīs,	<i>you might love,</i>
āmārent,	<i>they might love.</i>

PERFECT.

I may have loved.

āmāvērim,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
āmāvēris,	<i>thou mayst have loved,</i>
āmāvērit,	<i>he may have loved;</i>

āmāvērimūs,	<i>we may have loved,</i>
āmāvēritīs,	<i>you may have loved,</i>
āmāvērint,	<i>they may have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have loved.

āmāvissēm,	<i>I might have loved,</i>
āmāvissēs,	<i>thou mightst have loved,</i>
āmāvissēt,	<i>he might have loved;</i>

āmāvissēmūs,	<i>we might have loved,</i>
āmāvissētīs,	<i>you might have loved,</i>
āmāvissent,	<i>they might have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. āmā,	<i>love thou;</i>
FUT. āmātō,	<i>thou shalt love,</i>
āmātō,	<i>he shall love;</i>

āmātē,	<i>love ye.</i>
āmātōtē,	<i>ye shall love,</i>
āmantō,	<i>they shall love.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRES. āmārē,	<i>to love.</i>
PERF. āmāvissē,	<i>to have loved.</i>
FUT. āmātūrūs ¹ essē,	<i>to be about to love.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. āmans, ²	<i>loving.</i>
FUT. āmātūrūs, ¹	<i>about to love.</i>

GERUND.

Gen. āmandī,	<i>of loving,</i>
Dat. āmandō,	<i>for loving,</i>
Acc. āmandūm,	<i>loving,</i>
Abl. āmandō,	<i>by loving.</i>

SUPINE.

Acc. āmātūm,	<i>to love,</i>
Abl. āmātū,	<i>to love, be loved.</i>

¹ Decline like *bonus*, 148.

² Decline like *prudens*, 157.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

206. Amor, *I am loved.* — STEM, *āma*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
āmōr,	āmārī,	āmātūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am loved.

SINGULAR.

āmōr
āmārīs, or rē
āmātūr;

PLURAL.

āmāmūr
āmāmīni
āmantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was loved.

āmābār
āmābārīs, or rē
āmābātūr;

āmābāmūr
āmābāmīni
āmābantūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be loved.

āmābōr
āmābōrīs, or rē
āmābītūr;

āmābīmūr
āmābīmīni
āmābuntūr.

PERFECT.

I have been or was loved.

āmātūs sūm¹
āmātūs es
āmātūs est;

āmātī sūmūs
āmātī estīs
āmātī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been loved.

āmātūs ērām¹
āmātūs ērās
āmātūs ērāt;

āmātī ērāmūs
āmātī ērātīs
āmātī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been loved.

āmātūs ērō¹
āmātūs ērīs
āmātūs ērīt;

āmātī ērīmūs
āmātī ērītīs
āmātī ērunt.

¹ *Fui, fuisti, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sum, es, etc.*; thus *amātus fui* for *amātus sum*. So *fuēram, fuēras, etc.*, for *ēram, ēras, etc.*; also *fuēro, fuēris, etc.*, for *ēro, ēris, etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may be loved.

SINGULAR.

āmēr
āmēris, or rē
āmētūr;

PLURAL.

āmēmūr
āmēmīni
āmentūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should be loved.

āmārēr
āmārēris, or rē
āmārētūr;

āmārēmūr
āmārēmīni
āmārentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been loved.

āmātūs sīm¹
āmātūs sis
āmātūs sīt;

āmāti simūs
āmāti sitīs
āmāti sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have been loved.

āmātūs essēm¹
āmātūs essēs
āmātūs essēt;

āmāti essēmūs
āmāti essētīs
āmāti essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. āmarē, *be thou loved;*

āmāmīni, *be ye loved.*

FUT. āmātor, *thou shalt be loved;*

āmātor, *he shall be loved;*

āmantor, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES āmāri, *to be loved.*

PERF. āmātūs essē, *to have been loved.*

PERF. āmātūs, *having been loved.*

FUT. āmātūna iri, *to be about to be loved.*

GER.² āmandūs, *to be loved, deserving to be loved.*

¹ *Fuērim, fuēris, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sim, sis, etc.* So also *fuissem, fuisses, etc.*, for *essem, esses, etc.*

² GER. = Gerundive. See 196, 4.

MODELS FOR PARSING REGULAR VERBS.

1. *With Subject.*

emb. no Vós laudāvistis, *You have praised.*

Laudavistis is a transitive verb (192, 193) of the First Conjugation (201), from *laudo*; STEM, *lauda*. Principal Parts: *laudo*, *laudāre*, *laudāvi*, *laudātum*. Inflection of Tense: *laudāvi*, *laudavisti*, *laudāvī*, *laudavimus*, *laudavistis*, *laudavērunt*, or *laudavēre*. The form *laudavistis* is found in the Active voice, Indicative mood, Perfect tense, Second person, Plural number, and agrees with its subject *vos*, according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

2. *Without Subject.*

Laudāvistis, *You have praised.*

This is parsed like *laudavistis*, above, except that it agrees with *vos*, implied in the ending *istis*; while *laudavistis*, above, agrees with *vos* expressed.

FIRST CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Vitūpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *to blame.*

Laudō, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *to praise.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amo, amābam, amābo.¹
2. Amas, amābas, amābis.
3. Amat, amant.¹
4. Amābat, amābant.
5. Amābit, amā-

¹ The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe in what they are *alike*, and in what they are *unlike*. Thus *amo*, *amābam*, *amābo*, have the letters *am*

bunt.¹ 6. Amāmus, amabāmus, amabīmus. 7. Amāvi, amavēram, amavēro. 8. Amāvit, amavērat, amavērit. 9. Amāvi, amavīmus. 10. Amavēram, amāverāmus. 11. Amavēro, amaverīmus. 12. Amem, amārem, amavērim, amavissem. 13. Amēmus, amarēmus, amaverīmus, amāvissēmus. 14. Amet, ament. 15. Amāret, amārent. 16. Amavērit, amāvērīnt. 17. Amavisset, amavissent. 18. Ama, amāte, amatōte. 19. Amāto, amanto. ~~XX~~

III. Translate into Latin.

1. I praise, I was praising, I will praise. 2. He praises, they praise. 3. He will praise, they will praise. 4. He was praising, they were praising. 5. You were praising, you will praise, you praise. 6. He has loved, he had loved, he will have loved. 7. I have praised, I had praised, I shall have praised. 8. He may love, they may love. 9. Let him praise, let them praise. 10. He would blame, they would blame. 11. I should have praised, we should have praised. 12. Praise thou, praise ye.

FIRST CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXI.

I. Translate into English.

1. Amor, amābar, amābor. 2. Amāris, amabāris, amaberis. 3. Amātur, amantur. 4. Amabātur, amabantur.

in common; but they differ from each other in the endings, *o*, *ābam*, *ābo*. Originally, however, these forms had not only *am*, but *ama* in common, as *amo* was originally *ama-o*. This common basis *ama* is the stem of the verb. Such forms as *ama-t* and *ama-nt* show the stem in full. They are formed respectively by adding *t* and *nt* to the stem.

¹ Here the pupil will observe that the plural ending *bunt* differs from the singular ending *bit*, not only in having *n* before *t*, but also in changing *i* into *u*: *BIT*, *BUNT*.

5. *Amabŭtur, amabuntur.* 6. *Amāmur, amabāmur, amabŭmur.* 7. *Amātus*¹ *sum, amātus eram, amātus ero.* 8. *Amātus es, amātus eras, amātus eris.* 9. *Amātus est, amāti*¹ *sunt.* 10. *Amātus erat, amāti erant.* 11. *Amātus erit, amāti erunt.* 12. *Amer, amārer, amātus sim, amātus essem.* 13. *Amēmur, amarēmur, amāti simus, amāti essēmus.* 14. *Amētur, amentur.* 15. *Amarētur, amarentur.* 16. *Amātus sit, amāti sint.* 17. *Amātus esset, amāti essent.* 18. *Amātor, amantor.*

II. *Translate into Latin.* } 7

1. He is praised, they are praised. 2. He was praised, they were praised. 3. He will be praised, they will be praised. 4. I am blamed, I was blamed, I shall be blamed. 5. You are loved, you are praised. 6. You were loved, you were praised. 7. You will be loved, you will be praised. 8. I have been blamed, you have been praised. 9. I had been blamed, you had been praised. 10. I shall have been blamed, you will have been praised.) 11. You may be blamed, you might be blamed. 12. He would have been blamed, they would have been praised. 13. Let him be praised, let them be praised. 14. Be thou praised, be ye praised.

¹ The learner will observe, that, when the verb and the subject (expressed or implied) are in the Singular, the participle (*amātus*), which forms one element of the verb, is also in the Singular; and that, when the verb and the subject are in the Plural, the participle (*amāti*) is also in the Plural.

The form of the participle also varies with the *gender* of the subject, as well as with its *number*. Thus, if the subject is Masculine, the participle will be *amātus* in the Singular, and *amāti* in the Plural; if Feminine, *amāta* in the Singular, and *amātae* in the Plural; and, if Neuter, *amātum* in the Singular, and *amāta* in the Plural. Thus the participle in the compound tenses (i.e., in those which are made up of the participle and the auxiliary *sum*) agrees with the subject in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, like an adjective, according to Rule XXXV. 1, note.

FIRST CONJUGATION—BOTH VOICES.

EXERCISE XXII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Laudo, laudor.¹ 2. Laudābo, laudābor.² 3. Laudābam, laudābar.² 4. Laudem, lauder. 5. Laudārem, laudārer.² 6. Laudat, laudatur.¹ 7. Amābat, amabatur. 8. Amābit, amabitur. 9. Amet, ametur. 10. Amāret, amarētur. 11. Laudārent, laudarentur. 12. Ament, amentur. 13. Laudant, laudantur. 14. Amābant, amabantur. 15. Laudābunt, laudabuntur. 16. Amāvit, amātus est. 17. Laudavērat, laudātus erat. 18. Amavērit, amātus erit. 19. Lauda, laudāre. 20. Amāto, amātor. 21. Laudanto, laudantor.

II. *Translate into Latin.* / 8

1. He blames, he is blamed. 2. I was praising, I was praised. 3. You will praise, you will be praised. 4. He

¹ In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Voices,—the Active and the Passive,—and observe the difference between them. The Passive *laudor* differs from the Active *laudo* only in adding *r*; the Passive *laudābar* differs from the Active *laudābam* only in taking *r* in place of *m*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the first person of the Passive is formed from the first person of the Active by simply adding *r*; or, if the Active ends in *m*, by substituting *r* for *m*. Again: the Passive *laudatur* differs from the Active *laudat* only in adding *ur*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the third person of the Passive is formed from the third person of the Active by simply adding *ur*.

² Where must we look to find the meaning of these endings,—in the Vocabulary, or in the Grammar? and where to find the general meaning of the verb? See Suggestion II. To find the meaning of the verb to which *laudābor* belongs, for what form must we look in the Vocabulary? See Suggestion VII.

will blame, he will be blamed. 5. They will praise, they will be praised. 6. We blame, we are blamed. 7. He has praised, he has been praised. 8. They have blamed, they have been blamed. 9. He had praised, he had been praised. 10. They had blamed, they had been blamed. 11. He may praise, he may be praised. 12. He would blame, he would be blamed. 13. They may praise, they may be praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.¹

DIRECT OBJECT.

RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object² of an action is put in the Accusative.

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.*³ Cic. Libēra rem publicam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni sālūtem dēfendite, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

¹ It is thought advisable that the pupil should now commence a review of the grammatical forms which he has already learned. Accordingly, this Exercise will involve nouns of the First and of the Second Declension. The pupil should therefore carefully review those Declensions (48, 51). In connection with the subsequent Exercises, it is expected that the other Declensions and the other Grammatical forms will be reviewed in order, as will be indicated in the respective headings which precede the several Exercises.

² The *Direct Object* of an action is generally the *object*, person, or thing, on which the action is *directly* exerted; as, *sālūtem*, safety, in the third example; *defend* (what?) *the safety*. But the *Direct Object* is sometimes the *effect* of the action, i.e. the object produced by it; as, *mundum*, world, in the first example, — *made the world*.

³ In English, the object follows the verb; thus, in this example, *world* follows *made*; but in Latin the object usually precedes the verb: thus *mundum* precedes *aedificāvit*. So also, in the third example, *sālūtem* precedes *dēfendite*; but sometimes the object follows the verb: thus in the second example, *rem publicam* follows *libēra*.

MODEL FOR PARSING DIRECT OBJECTS.

Deūs mundūm aedificāvit, *God made the world.*

Mundum is a noun (39) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *mundo*. Singular: *mundus*, *mundi*, *mundo*, *mundum*, *munde*, *mundo*. Plural: *mundi*, *mundōrum*, *mundis*, *mundos*, *mundi*, *mundis*. It is of the Masculine gender, by 51; is in the Accusative Singular; and is the Direct Object of the transitive verb *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.: "The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative."

EXERCISE XXIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aedificō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to build.</i>
Arō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to plough.</i>
Cantō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to sing.</i>
Italiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Italy.</i>
Libērō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to liberate.</i>
Rēnōvō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to renew.</i>
Spērō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to hope.</i>
Tarquīniūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Tarquinius, Roman king.</i>
Thēmistōclēs, is, <i>m.</i>	<i>Themistocles, Athenian commander.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Lusciniam laudo.*¹ 2. *Lusciniam laudāmus.* 3. *Luscinias laudat.* 4. *Luscinias laudant.* 5. *Luscinia laudatur.* 6. *Lusciniae laudantur.* 7. *Patriam amāmus.* 8. *Pro patriā*² *pugnabimus.*³ 9. *Nonne*³ *Themistōcles patriam liberāvit?* 10. *Patriam liberāvit.* 11. *Italiam liberāverunt.* 12. *Italia liberāta*⁴ *est.* 13. *Tarquinius templum aedificā-*

¹ *Lusciniam* is the *Direct Object* of *laudo*, according to Rule V.

² See Rule XXXII. page 26, and vocabulary page 73.

³ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

⁴ For agreement of participle with subject, see Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

vit. 14. Templum aedificābat. 15. Templa aedificavērant. 16. Templa aedificāta erant. ~~17.~~ 17. Templum aedificātum erit. 18. Puērū laudabāmus. 19. Puēri laudāti sunt. 20. Nonne¹ bellum renovātum est?

III. Translate into Latin. 17

1. The nightingale is singing. 2. The nightingales are singing. 3. The nightingales will sing. 4. The boys have been praised. 5. Did you not¹ praise the boys?² 6. We praised the boys. 7. The boys will be praised. 8. Have we not¹ liberated Italy? 9. You have liberated Italy. 10. We will liberate the country. 11. We were ploughing the field. 12. Will you plough the field? 13. The field will be ploughed.

FIRST CONJUGATION—THIRD DECLENSION.³

ADVERBS.

RULE LI.—Use of Adverbs.

582. Adverbs⁴ qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS:

Sāpientes feliciter⁴ vivunt, *The wise live happily.* Cic. Facile⁴ doctissimus, *unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. Haud⁴ aliter, *not otherwise.* Virg.

¹ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

² The Latin word for *boys* in this sentence will be in the Accusative, according to Rule V., and will precede the verb.

³ The pupil should now review the Third Declension (55–64).

⁴ The Adverb is, therefore, the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. *Feliciter*, happily, is an adverb qualifying the verb *vivunt*, live (live *happily*). *Facile*, easily, unquestionably, is an adverb qualifying the adjective *doctissimus*, the most learned (*easily*, i.e. *unquestionably* the most learned). *Haud*, not, is an adverb qualifying the adverb *aliter*, otherwise (*not otherwise*). The adverb in Latin usually stands directly before the word which it qualifies, as in these examples.

MODEL FOR PARSING ADVERBS.

Sāpientēs felicītēr vivunt, *The wise live happily.*

Felicītēr is an adverb, and qualifies *vivunt*, according to Rule LI.:
 “Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS.”

EXERCISE XXIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Elōquentiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>eloquence.</i>
Expugnō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to take, take by storm.</i>
Fortitēr, <i>adv.</i>	<i>bravely.</i>
Jūventūs, jūventūtis, <i>f.</i>	<i>youth.</i>
Ornō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to adorn, be an ornament to.</i>
Piētās, piētātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>filial affection, piety, duty.</i>
Pugnō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to fight.</i>
Servō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to preserve, keep, save.</i>
Vōlō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to fly.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Avis volat. 2. Aves volant. 3. Nonne¹ avis cantābat? 4. Aves cantābant. 5. Rex urbem² aedificāvit. 6. Urbs aedificāta³ est. 7. Urbes aedificātae³ erunt. 8. Milītes fortitēr⁴ pugnāverunt. 9. Scipio⁵ milītes laudāvit. 10. Scipio⁵ milītum virtūtem laudābat. 11. Scipionem laudāmus. 12. Scipio patrem servāvit. 13. Scipio urbem expugnāvit. 14. Urbs expugnāta est. 15. Milītes patriam amant. 16. Milītes⁵ pro patriā pugnābant. 17. Piētās puēros ornat. 18. Virtūtes civitātem ornant.

¹ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

² *Urbem*, direct object of *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.

³ Why *aedificāta* in one case, and *aedificātae* in the other? Why not *aedificātus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

⁴ *Fortitēr*, an Adverb qualifying *pugnāverunt*, according to Rule LI.

⁵ In what order will you look out the words in this sentence? See Suggestion V.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The birds are singing. 2. Do you not¹ love birds?²
 3. We love birds.³ 4. This bird will fly. 5. Did you not¹
 save the city? 6. The soldiers⁴ saved the city. 7. Shep-
 herds love the mountains. 8. We love virtue. 9. Is not
 virtue loved? 10. It is loved. 11. Do not the citizens
 praise the king? 12. They praise the king. 13. The king
 will be praised. 14. The virtue of the king is praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.³

EXERCISE XXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Convocō, arē, avi, atum,	to assemble, call together.
Duplicō, arē, avi, atum,	to double, increase.
Dux, dūcis, m.	general, leader.
Fidēs, fidēi, f.	faith, fidelity, word, ⁴ promise.
Fugō, arē, avi, atum,	to rout.
Hōmō, hōmīnis, m.	man.
Sēnātūs, ūs, m.	senate.
Stimulō, arē, avi, atum,	to stimulate.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Homīnes⁵ cantum lusciniæ⁶ laudant. 2. Cantus lus-
 ciniæ laudatur. 3. Romulus exercitum fugat. 4. Nonne

¹ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

² Remember that the *object* in Latin usually precedes the verb.

³ The pupil should now review these Declensions (116, 120).

⁴ To keep one's word, *fidem servare*: I keep my word, *fidem meam servo*, or *fidem servo*, as the Latin possessives, *meus*, my, *tuus*, your, etc., when not emphatic, are often omitted; when expressed, they usually follow their nouns.

⁵ In this sentence, what order will you follow, in accordance with Suggestion V., in looking out the words in the Vocabulary? In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *homīnes* (60), *mīlites* (58), *stimulāvīt* (205)?

⁶ See Rule XVI. page 21.

exercitum fugavimus? 5. Exercitus fugatus est. 6. Exercitus fugatus erit. 7. Consul senatum convocavit. 8. Senatus convocatus est. 9. Senatus consulem laudavit. 10. Spes victoriae milites stimulavit. 11. Numerum dierum duplicavi. 12. Numerus dierum duplicatus est.

III. *Translating into Latin.*

1. The boy has kept his word.¹ 2. Will you not keep your word? 3. We will keep our word. 4. The consul praised the fidelity of the citizens. 5. Will not the fidelity of the citizens be praised? 6. Will not the citizens praise the fidelity of the army? 7. They have praised the fidelity of the army. 8. Did not the general praise the army? 9. He praised the army. 10. The army will be praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — ADJECTIVES.²

EXERCISE XXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Ampliō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	to enlarge.
Condemnō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	to condemn.
Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, m.	Hannibal, Carthaginian general.
Innocens, innocentis,	innocent.
Nōbilis, ē,	noble.
Nōvūs, ā, ūm,	new.
Occūpō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	to occupy.
Pūnicūs, ā, ūm,	Carthaginian, Punic.

¹ See note 4, preceding page.

² The pupil should now review Adjectives (146-162).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rex urbem novam¹ ampliabat. 2. Urbem novam ampliabunt. 3. Rex urbem pulchram¹ ampliaverat. 4. Urbs pulchra servata² est. 5. Hannibal multas civitates occupavit. 6. Iudices hominem innocentissimum³ condemnaverunt. 7. Num Punicum bellum renovatum est? 8. Nonne Punicum bellum renovatum est? 9. Punicum bellum renovatum est. 10. Romani nobilissimas³ urbes expugnaverunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not the brave soldiers save the city? 2. The brave soldiers will save the beautiful city. 3. The noble city will be saved. 4. We praise good boys. 5. Good boys will be praised. 6. Do you not praise diligent pupils? 7. Diligent pupils are praised. 8. The citizens praise the brave soldiers.

FIRST CONJUGATION—PRONOUNS.⁴

EXERCISE XXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Agis, Agidīs, m.
Dēlectō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,
Diligentiā, ae, f.
Nōn, adv.
Sālūtō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,
Suūs, ū, ūm,

Agis, king of Sparta.
to delight.
diligence.
not.
to salute.
his, her, its, their.

¹ See Rule XXXIII. p. 34.

² Why *servata* rather than *servatus*? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, p. 54.

³ In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 162.

⁴ The pupil should now review Pronouns (182-191).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis hanc¹ urbem servābit? 2. Hanc urbem pulchram servabimus. 3. Quis te² salutāvit? 4. Pater meus¹ te salutāt. 5. Haec¹ vita te delectat. 6. Philosophia nos² delectat. 7. Omnia animalia se³ amant. 8. Fratres tui¹ laudantur. 9. Fratres mei laudāti sunt. 10. Puer parentes suos³ amat. 11. Puēri boni parentes suos³ amant. 12. Parentes nostros amāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you blame me? 2. We do not⁴ blame you. 3. Whom do you blame? 4. We blame your brother. 5. This book delights me. 6. These books delighted us. 7. Did not⁵ your father praise you? 8. He praised us. 9. Did not⁵ king Agis praise your diligence? 10. Our parents praised our diligence. 11. Did your brother blame you? 12. He did not⁴ blame me. 13. He blamed himself. 14. He will be blamed.

¹ These Pronouns are all used as adjectives, and agree with their nouns like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. p. 34. Pronouns thus used as adjectives generally precede their nouns; but the Possessive Pronouns, *meus, tuus*, etc. (185), generally follow their nouns, as in this Exercise.

² Personal Pronouns, it will be remembered, are used as substantives (184). They are accordingly governed like any other substantives. See Rule V. p. 70. Observe that the object precedes the verb.

³ The pupil will observe that *suos* in the tenth sentence must be rendered *his*, while in the eleventh it must be rendered *their*. Thus the meaning of the Possessive *suus* depends in part upon the number of the word to which it refers. It must be rendered *his* (*her, its*) when that word, as *puer* in the tenth sentence, is in the *Singular*; but it must be rendered *their* when that word, as *puēri* in the eleventh sentence, is in the *Plural*.

⁴ When a verb with a direct object has also an adverb qualifying it, the usual order is *Object, Adverb, Verb*; but the adverb *non*, not, may stand either *before* or *after* the object.

⁵ Nonne.

⁶ *ad, to advise, be advised*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

207. Moneo, *I advise*. — STEM, *mōne*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
mōneō,	mōnērē,	mōnuī,	mōnītūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I advise.

SINGULAR.

mōneō
mōnēs
mōnēt;

PLURAL.

mōnēmūs
mōnētis
mōnent.

IMPERFECT.

I was advising.

mōnēbam
mōnēbas
mōnēbāt;

mōnēbāmūs
mōnēbātis
mōnēbant.

FUTURE.

I shall or will advise.

mōnēbō
mōnēbis
mōnēbit;

mōnēbimūs
mōnēbitis
mōnēbunt.

PERFECT.

I advised or have advised.

mōnuī
mōnuisti
mōnuīt;

mōnuimūs
mōnuistis—
mōnuērunt, or ērē.

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised.

mōnuērām
mōnuērās
mōnuērāt;

mōnuērāmūs
mōnuērātis
mōnuērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have advised.

mōnuērō
the Vocabula

mōnuērīmūs
mōnuērītis
mōnuērint.

* The pupil should

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may advise.

SINGULAR.

mōneā**m**
mōneā**s**
mōneā**t**;

PLURAL.

mōneā**mūs**
mōneā**tis**
mōneā**nt.**

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should advise.

mōnērē**m**
mōnērē**s**
mōnērē**t**;

mōnērē**mūs**
mōnērē**tis**
mōnērē**nt.**

PERFECT.

I may have advised.

mōnuērī**m**
mōnuērī**s**
mōnuērī**t**;

mōnuērī**mūs**
mōnuērī**tis**
mōnuērī**nt.**

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have advised.

mōnuissē**m**
mōnuissē**s**
mōnuissē**t**;

mōnuissē**mūs**
mōnuissē**tis**
mōnuissē**nt.**

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōn ē , advise thou ;	mōn ētē , advise ye.
FUT. mōn ētō , thou shalt advise,	mōn ētōtē , ye shall advise,
mōn ētō , he shall advise ;	mōn entō , they shall advise

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōnēr ē , to advise.	PRES. mōnēns, advising.
PERF. mōnuiss ē , to have advised.	
FUT. mōnītūr us ess ē , to be about to advise.	FUT. mōnītūr us , about to advise.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. mōnēnd i , of advising,	
Dat. mōnēnd ō , for advising,	
Acc. mōnēnd ūm , advising,	Acc. mōnīt ūm , to advise,
Abl. mōnēnd ō , by advising.	Abl. mōnīt ū , to advise, be advised.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

208. Moneor, *I am advised.* — STEM, *mōne*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
mōneōr,	mōnēri,	mōnītūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am advised.

SINGULAR.

mōneōr
mōnēris, or rē
mōnētūr;

PLURAL.

mōnēmūr *no*
mōnēmīni
mōnentūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was advised.

mōnēbār
mōnēbāris, or rē
mōnēbātūr;

mōnēbāmūr *no*
mōnēbāmīni
mōnēbantūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be advised.

mōnēbōr
mōnēbēris, or rē
mōnēbitūr;

mōnēbimūr
mōnēbimīni
mōnēbuntūr.

PERFECT.

I have been or was advised.

mōnītūs sūm¹
mōnītūs es
mōnītūs est;

mōnītī sūmūs
mōnītī estīs
mōnītī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been advised.

mōnītūs ērām¹
mōnītūs ērās
mōnītūs erāt;

mōnītī ērāmus
mōnītī ērātīs
mōnītī erant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been advised.

mōnītūs ērō¹
mōnītūs erīs
mōnītūs erit;

mōnītī ērimūs
mōnītī eritīs
mōnītī erunt.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may be advised.

SINGULAR.

mōneār
mōneāris, or rē
mōneātūr;

PLURAL.

mōneāmūr
mōneāminī
mōneantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should be advised.

mōnērēr
mōnērēris, or rē
mōnērētūr;

mōnērēmūr
mōnērēmīnī
mōnērentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been advised.

mōnītūs sīm¹
mōnītūs sis
mōnītūs sit;

mōnītī sīmūs
mōnītī sitīs
mōnītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have been advised.

mōnītūs essēm¹
mōnītūs essēs
mōnītūs essēt;

mōnītī essēmūs
mōnītī essētīs
mōnītī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnērē, be thou advised; | mōnēmīnī, be ye advised.

FUT. mōnētōr, thou shalt be advised,
mōnētōr, he shall be advised;

mōnentōr, they shall be advised.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. mōnēri, to be advised,
PERF. mōnītūs essē, to have been advised,
FUT. mōnītūm iri, to be about to be advised.

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. mōnītūs, advised,
GER.¹ mōnendūs, to be advised, deserving to be advised.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SECOND CONJUGATION — ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Mōneō, mōnērē, mōnuī, mōnītūm,	<i>to advise.</i>
Pāreō, pārērē, pārui, pārītūm,	<i>to obey.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneo, monēbam, monēbo.¹ 2. Mones, monētis. 3. Monet, monent. 4. Monēmus, monebāmus, monebīmus. 5. Monēbant, monēbunt. 6. Monui, monuēram, monuēro. 7. Monuimus, monuerāmus, monuerīmus. 8. Monuit, monuērunt. 9. Monuērat, monuērant. 10. Monuērit, monuērint. 11. Moneam, monērem, monuērim, monuissem. 12. Moneat, moneant. 13. Monēret, monērent. 14. Monuērit, monuērint. 15. Monuisset, monuissent.

28

 III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. You advise, you were advising, you will advise. 2. He obeys, they obey. 3. He was obeying, they were obeying. 4. He will advise, they will advise. 5. He has obeyed, he had obeyed, he will have obeyed. 6. They have advised, they had advised, they will have advised. 7. I have advised, we have advised. 8. I had advised, I had obeyed. 9. He may advise, he may obey.

¹ The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe wherein they differ from each other.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXIX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cantō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to sing.</i>
Spērō, ārē, āvi. ātūm,	<i>to hope.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sperat, paret.¹ 2. Sperant, parent. 3. Sperāmus, parēmus. 4. Sperābat, parēbat. 5. Sperābant, parēbant. 6. Sperābam, parēbam. 7. Sperabāmus, parebāmus. 8. Sperabīmus, parebīmus. 9. Sperābo, parēbo. 10. Sperāvi, parui. 11. Speravēram, paruēram. 12. Speravēro, paruēro. 13. Speravīmus, paruīmus. 14. Speravērat, paruērat. 15. Speravērint, paruērint. 16. Sperāte, parēte.

29
III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I sing, I advise. 2. I was singing, I was advising. 3. I will sing, I will advise. 4. He will hope, he will obey. 5. They will hope, they will obey. 6. They were singing, they were advising. 7. They sing, they advise. 8. He has hoped, he has obeyed. 9. They have hoped, they have obeyed. 10. He had sung, he had obeyed. 11. They had sung, they had obeyed. 12. We had hoped, we had advised. 13. We would sing, we would obey.

¹ In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Conjugations, — the First and the Second, — and should carefully observe the difference between them.

SECOND CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XXX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Anrūm, i, n.	gold.
Flōs, flōris, m.	flower.
Hābeō, hābērē, hābuī, hābītūm,	to have, hold.
Mēreō, mērērē, mēruī, mērītūm,	to deserve, merit.
Philōsōphūs, i, m.	philosopher.
Pondūs, pondērīs, n.	weight, mass.
Praebeō, praeberē, praebuī, praebītūm,	to furnish, give.
Praemiūm, ii, n.	reward.
Tāceō, tācērē, tācuī, tācītūm,	to be silent.
Terreō, terrērē, terruī, terrītūm,	to frighten, terrify.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Puer librum habet. 2. Puēri libros habent. 3. Libros utiles¹ habēmus. 4. Librum utilem habuisti. 5. Nonne bonum¹ amicum habēbis? 6. Bonum amicum habēbo. 7. Bonos amicos habuīmus. 8. Rex amicos habēbat. 9. Rex aurum habēbat. 10. Rex² magnum auri pondus³ habuērat. 11. Gloriam veram habebītis. 12. Ver praebet flores. 13. Ver praebebit flores. 14. Philōsōphus tacēbat. 15. Discipūlus praeium meret.

¹ Observe that the Latin adjective may either precede or follow its noun; though it seems more frequently to follow, unless it is emphatic.

² In this sentence, endeavor, in accordance with Suggestion IV., to discover the *subject*, *verb*, and *object*, before looking out the words in the Vocabulary. In what order will you look out the words in accordance with Suggestion V.?

³ When a noun is qualified by both an adjective and a genitive, as *pondus* by *magnum* and *auri*, the adjective usually precedes both nouns, and is followed by the genitive, as in this example: *magnum auri pondus*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who has my book? 2. I have your book. 3. Which book have you? 4. I have three¹ books. 5. My brother has ten books. 6. The king had a golden crown. 7. Did he not have many friends? 8. He had many friends. 9. You will have true friends. 10. The pupils are silent.² 11. Will you not be silent? 12. We will be silent.

SECOND CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneor, monēbar, monēbor. 2. Monēmur, monebāmur, monebīmur. 3. Moneātur, moneantur. 4. Monerētur, monerentur. 5. Monītus est, monīti sunt. 6. Monītus erat, monīti erant. 7. Monītus erit, monīti erunt. 8. Monētor, monentor. 9. Monet, monētur. 10. Monent, monentur. 11. Monēbat, Monebātur. 12. Monēbant, monebantur. 13. Monēbit, monebītur. 14. Monēbunt, monebuntur. 15. Monēmus, monēmur. 16. Monebāmus, Monebāmūr. 17. Monebīmus, monebīmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is advised, they are advised. 2. I was terrified, we were terrified. 3. He will be advised, they will be advised. 4. You have been terrified, I have been terrified. 5. He had been advised, he had been terrified. 6. I shall have been advised, I shall have been terrified. 7. I advise, I am advised. 8. I was advising, I was advised. 9. I shall advise, I shall be advised. 10. They terrify, they are terrified. 11. They were terrifying, they were terrified. 12. They will terrify, they will be terrified.

¹ Place the Numeral *before* the noun.

² *Are silent* is to be rendered by the Latin verb *taceo*.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Admōneō, admōnēre, admōnuī, admōnītum,	<i>to admonish.</i>
Amō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to love.</i>
Invitō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to invite.</i>
Laudō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to praise.</i>
Terreō, terrere, terrui, terrītum,	<i>to terrify.</i>
Vitupēro, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to blame.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitātur, terrētur. 2. Invitantur, terrentur. 3. Invitāmur, terrēmur. 4. Invitabāmur, terrebāmur. 5. Invitabātur, terrebātur. 6. Invitabantur, terrebantur. 7. Invitabuntur, terrebuntur. 8. Invitabūtur, terrebūtur. 9. Invitābor, terrēbor. 10. Invitātus sum, terrītus sum. 11. Invitāti sumus, terrīti sumus. 12. Invitātus est, terrītus est. 13. Invitāti sunt, terrīti sunt. 14. Invitāti erant, terrīti erant. 15. Invitātus erat, terrītus erat.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am invited, I am admonished. 2. You are invited, you are admonished. 3. He was praised, he was advised. 4. They were praised, they were advised. 5. You will be invited, you will be admonished. 6. He has been blamed, he has been terrified. 7. They had been loved, they had been admonished. 8. They will have been invited, they

will have been admonished. 9. I may be invited, I may be admonished. 10. I should be invited, I should be admonished.

SECOND CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Apūd, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>near, before, among.</i>
Exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitum,	<i>to exercise, train.</i>
Frāter, frātris, <i>m.</i>	<i>brother.</i>
Māgistēr, māgistrī, <i>m.</i>	<i>master, teacher.</i>
Mēmōriā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>memory.</i>
Puēr, puēri, <i>m.</i>	<i>boy.</i>
Quis, quae, quid, ¹	<i>who, which, what?</i>
Rectē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>rightly.</i>
Tuū, tui, ūm,	<i>your, yours.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Quis monētur? 2. Nonne puer monētur? 3. Puer recte monētur. 4. Puēri recte monentur. 5. Discipuli recte moniti sunt. 6. Discipulus recte monitus est. 7. Frater tuus recte admonitus erit. 8. Fratres tui recte admoniti erunt. 9. Nonne admoniti sumus? 10. Recte admoniti sumus. 11. Memoria exercetur. 12. Memoria

¹ For the declension of the Interrogative Pronoun *quis*, see 188.

exerceatur.¹ 13. Memoria exercebĭtur. 14. Discipŭli apud magistros exercentur.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Were not the boys terrified? 2. They were terrified.
3. Let² the pupils be admonished. 4. They have been admonished. 5. Who will be advised? 6. These boys will be advised. 7. Has your memory been exercised? 8. My memory has been exercised. 9. Was not the general terrified? 10. The general himself³ was not terrified. 11. The soldiers were terrified.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS—MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cāmillŭs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Camillus</i> , Roman general.
Exspectō, āre, āvi, ātŭm,	<i>to await, expect.</i>
Hostĭs, <i>is, m. and f.</i>	<i>enemy.</i>
Ingens, ingentĭs,	<i>huge, large, great.</i>
Lēgiō, lēgiōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>legion, body of soldiers.</i>
Nōn, <i>adv.</i>	<i>not.</i>
Nŭmērŭs, <i>m.</i>	<i>number.</i>
Optō, āre, āvi, ātŭm,	<i>to wish for, desire.</i>
Pēcūniā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>money.</i>

¹ *Exerceatur*; the Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*. See 196. I. 2.

² *Let be admonished* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

³ *Himself* = *ipse*. See 186.

Philōsōphūs, i, m.	<i>philosopher.</i>
Præceptōr, præceptōris, m.	<i>teacher.</i>
Proeliū, ii, n.	<i>battle.</i>
Rōmānūs, i, m.	<i>Roman, a Roman.</i>
Sūpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to conquer.</i>
Vērēcundiā, ae, f.	<i>modesty.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Camillus hostes superāvit. 2. Hostes superāti sunt.
 3. Omnes discipūli parūerant.¹ 4. Romāni hostem expectā-
 bant. 5. Romāni² ingentem hostium numērum³ expecta-
 vērant.¹ 6. Hostes proelium expectābant. 7. Praeceptor
 tacēbat. 8. Discipūli tacēbant. 9. Verecundia juventūtem
 ornat. 10. Philōsōphus pecuniam non habet. 11. Philōs-
 ōphi pecuniam non optant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are you expecting me? 2. We are expecting you.
 3. Did you not await the enemy?⁴ 4. We awaited the
 enemy. 5. Have you not a good memory? 6. I have a
 good memory. 7. Will the soldiers obey? 8. The brave
 soldiers will obey. 9. Camillus had an army. 10. He
 praised the army. 11. Did you advise the boy? 12. We
 advised the boys. 13. Were not the enemy put to flight?⁵
 14. They were put to flight.

¹ In accordance with Suggestion VII. 3, for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 205, 207.

² Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

³ *Ingentem hostium numērum*, for arrangement see note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX.

⁴ Put the Latin word in the plural.

⁵ *Put to flight* is to be rendered by a single Latin verb.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

209. Rego, *I rule.* — STEM, *reg.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
regō,	regere,	rexī,	rectum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I rule.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
regō	regimūs <i>me</i>
regis	regitis <i>you</i>
regit ;	regunt.

IMPERFECT

I was ruling.

regēbam	regēbāmūs <i>me</i>
regēbas	regēbātis
regēbat ;	regēbant.

FUTURE.

I shall or will rule.

regām	regēmūs
regēs	regētis
regēt ;	regent.

PERFECT.

I ruled or have ruled.

rexī	reximūs
rexisti	rexistis
rexit ;	rexerunt, or <i>erē.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled.

rexeram	rexerāmūs
rexeras	rexerātis
rexerat ;	rexerant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have ruled.

rexerō	rexerimūs
rexeris	rexeritis
rexerit ;	rexerint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may rule.

SINGULAR.

regam

regas

regat;

PLURAL.

regamūs

regātis

regant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should rule.

regērem

regēres

regeret;

regēremūs

regēretis

regerent.

PERFECT.

I may have ruled.

rexerim

rexeris

rexerit;

rexerimūs

rexeritis

rexerint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have ruled.

rexissem

rexisses

rexisset;

rexissemūs

rexissetis

rexissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. regē, rule thou;

regitē, rule ye.

FUT. regitō, thou shalt rule,

regitōtē, ye shall rule,

regitō, he shall rule;

reguntō, they shall rule.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. regere, to rule.

PERF. rexisse, to have ruled.

FUT. recturūs esse, to be about to rule.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. regens, ruling.

FUT. recturūs, about to rule.

GERUND.

Gen. regendi, of ruling,

Dat. regendō, for ruling,

Acc. regendū, ruling,

Abl. regendō, by ruling.

SUPINE.

Acc. rectū, to rule,

Abl. rectū, to rule, be ruled.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

210. Regor, *I am ruled.* — STEM, *reg.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
rēgōr,	rēgī,	rectūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am ruled.

SINGULAR.

rēgōr
rēgōris, or rē
rēgitūr;

PLURAL.

rēgimūr *we*
rēgimini *you*
rēgantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was ruled.

rēgebār
rēgebāris, or rē
rēgebātūr;

rēgebāmūr
rēgebāmini
rēgebantūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be ruled.

rēgār
rēgōris, or rē
rēgētūr;

rēgēmūr
rēgēmini
rēgentūr.

PERFECT.

I have been or was ruled.

rectūs sūm¹
rectūs ēs
rectūs est;

rectī sūmūs
rectī estīs
rectī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been ruled.

rectūs ērām¹
rectūs ērās
rectūs ērāt;

rectī ērāmūs
rectī ērātīs
rectī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been ruled.

rectūs ērō¹
rectūs ēris
rectūs erit;

rectī ērimūs
rectī ēritīs
rectī erunt.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may be ruled.

SINGULAR.

rēgār
rēgāris, or rē
rēgātūr;

PLURAL.

rēgāmūr
rēgāmini
rēgantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should be ruled.

rēgērēr
rēgērēris, or rē
rēgērētūr;

rēgērēmūr
rēgērēmini
rēgērentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled.

rectūs sim¹
rectūs sis
rectūs sit;

recti simūs
recti sitis
recti sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have been ruled.

rectūs essēm¹
rectūs essēs
rectūs essēt;

recti essēmūs
recti essētis
recti essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēgērē, *be thou ruled;* | rēgāmini, *be ye ruled.*

FUT. rēgītōr, *thou shalt be ruled;* | rēgantōr, *they shall be ruled.*
rēgītōr, *he shall be ruled;*

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rēgī, *to be ruled.*

PERF. rectūs essē, *to have been ruled.*

FUT. rectūm irī, *to be about to be ruled.*

PERF. rectūs, *ruled.*

GER.¹ rēgendūs, *to be ruled.*

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dūcō, ēre, duxī, ductūm,	to lead.
Rēgō, ēre, rexī, rectūm,	to rule, govern.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rego, regēbam, regam. 2. Regīmus, regebāmus, regēmus. 3. Regītis, regis. 4. Regēbas, regebātis. 5. Regēbant, regebat. 6. Reget, regent. 7. Rexērunt, rexit. 8. Rexi, rexeram, rexero. 9. Rexīmus, rexerāmus, rexerīmus. 10. Regas, regēres, rexēris, rexisses. 11. Regātis, regerētis, rexerītis, rexissētis. 12. Regam, regāmus. 13. Regerēmus, regērem. 14. Rexērit, rexerint. 15. Rexissent, rexisset. 16. Rege, regite.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He leads, he was leading, he will lead. 2. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule. 3. They lead, they rule. 4. They were leading, they were ruling. 5. They will lead, they will rule. 6. You have led, you have ruled. 7. He had led, he had ruled. 8. They had led, they had ruled. 9. He will have led, he will have ruled. 10. They may lead, they may rule. 11. He would lead, he would rule. 12. They would lead, they would rule. 13. We should have led, we should have ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS — ACTIVE
VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dicō, dicēre, dixi, dictum,	to say, tell, speak.
Vocō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	to call.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocat, tacet, dicit.¹ 2. Vocant, tacent, dicunt. 3. Vocābant, tacēbant, dicēbant. 4. Vocābo, tacēbo, dicam. 5. Vocāvīmus, tacuīmus, dixīmus. 6. Vocāvi, tacui, dixi. 7. Vocavērunt, tacuērunt, dixērunt. 8. Vocavērat, tacuērat, dixērat. 9. Vocavērint, tacuērint, dixērint. 10. Vocem, taceam, dicam. 11. Vocērent, tacērent, dicērent. 12. Vocāte, tacēte, dicite.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I invite, I admonish, I lead. 2. We call, we are silent, we speak. 3. We were inviting, we were admonishing, we were leading. 4. I shall call, I shall be silent, I shall speak. 5. He has invited, he has been silent, he has led. 6. He had praised, he had obeyed, he had ruled. 7. They had blamed, they had advised, they had spoken. 8. He may call, he may admonish, he may rule.

¹ In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the three Conjugations here represented, — the First, the Second, and the Third, — and should carefully observe the difference between them. The advantages of such a course are twofold: first, it teaches the pupil to distinguish the several Conjugations from each other, which is one of the most important lessons to be learned in the study of the language; and, secondly, it tends to form in him, thus early, the habit of close and accurate observation, the habit of marking differences and of tracing resemblances in kindred forms, which is of vital importance in the whole course of classical study.

THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.
OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Animūs, i, m.	<i>mind, passion.</i>
Bēnē, adv.	<i>well.</i>
Dēfectiō, dēfectiōnis, f.	<i>eclipse.</i>
Dīsertē, adv.	<i>clearly, eloquently.</i>
Edūcō, edūcērē, eduxī, eductūm,	<i>to lead forth.</i>
Indicō, indicērē, indixī, indictūm,	<i>to declare.</i>
Lātinē, adv.	<i>in Latin.</i>
Praedicō, praedicērē, praedixī, praedictūm,	<i>to predict, foretell.</i>
Sāpientēr, adv.	<i>wisely.</i>
Thālēs, is, m.	<i>Thales, a philosopher.</i>
Tullūs, i, m.	<i>Tullus, a Roman name.</i>
Vērūm, i, n.	<i>truth.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Bene dixisti. 2. Nonne Cicero in senātu dixērat?
3. Cicero diserte dicēbat. 4. Oratōres diserte dicent. 5.
Philosōphus sapienter dixit. 6. Philosōphi sapienter dixē-
rant. 7. Oratōres Latine dixērunt. 8. Caesar legiōnes
eduxit. 9. Hannibal exercitū in Italiam duxit. 10. Quis
bellum indixit? 11. Tullus bellum indixit. 12. Thales
dēfectiōnem solis praedixit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who will speak the truth? 2. Have we not spoken
the truth? 3. You have spoken the truth. 4. Will not
the general lead forth the army? 5. He has led forth the
army. 6. Do you not govern your mind? 7. We govern
our minds. 8. Did you predict this war? 9. We did not
predict the war. 10. Who has declared war? 11. The
Romans have declared war.

THIRD CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Regor, regēbar, regar. 2. Regīmur, regebāmur, regēmur. 3. Regar, regāmur. 4. Regerētur, regerentur. 5. Rectus est, rectus erat, rectus erit. 6. Recti sunt, recti erant, recti erunt. 7. Regit, regitur. 8. Regunt, reguntur. 9. Regēbat, regebātur. 10. Regēbant, regebantur. 11. Reget, regētur. 12. Regent, regentur. 13. Regīmus, regimur. 14. Regebāmus, regebāmur. 15. Regēmus, regēmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is ruled, they are ruled. 2. I am ruled, I am led. 3. We are ruled, we are led. 4. He was ruled, they were ruled.) 5. He will be ruled, they will be ruled. 6. We have been ruled, we have been led.) 7. I lead, I am led. 8. We lead, we are led. 9. We were ruling, we were ruled. 10. He was leading, he was led. 11. They may rule, they may be ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—
PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocor, moneor, ducor. 2. Vocāmur, monēmur, ducimur. 3. Vocātur, monētur, ducitur. 4. Vocabātur, monebātur, ducebātur. 5. Vocabantur, monebantur, ducebantur. 6. Vocabuntur, monebuntur, ducentur. 7. Vocā-

tus es, monitus es, ductus es. 8. Vocāti estis, monīti estis, ducti estis. 9. Vocātus eram, monītus eram, ductus eram. 10. Vocātus erit, monītus erit, ductus erit.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is invited, he is admonished, he is led. | 2. We were called, we were advised, we were ruled. 3. He will be called, he will be advised, he will be ruled. 4. He may be invited, he may be admonished, he may be led. } 5. He has been called, he has been advised, he has been led. 6. They have been called, they have been advised, they have been led.

THIRD CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XL.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Mundūs, i, m.	world.
Semper, adv.	always, ever.
Vērūm, i, n.	truth.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Mundus regitur. 2. Omnis hic mundus semper rectus est. 3. Hic mundus semper regitur. 4. Haec civitas bene regitur. 5. Hae civitates bene reguntur. 6. Civitates rectae sunt. 7. Anīmus regatur. 8. Exercitus in Italiam ductus est. 9. Multi exercitus in Italiam ducti erant. 10. Bellum indictum¹ erat. 11. Multa bella indicta¹ sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not the army led forth? 2. The army was led forth. 3. Has not this state been well governed? 4. This

¹ Why *indictum* in one example, and *indicta* in the other? Why not rather *indictus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

state has been well governed. 5. Will not the truth be spoken? 6. The truth has been spoken. 7. Let¹ the truth always be spoken. 8. Would not war have been declared? 9. War would have been declared. ~~X~~

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—
MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XLI.

I. Vocabulary.

Gallūs, i, m.	<i>Gallus</i> , a proper name.
Hirundō, hirundīnis, f.	<i>swallow</i> .
Lūnā, ae, f.	<i>moon</i> .
Nuntiō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to proclaim, announce</i>
Sensūs, ūs, m.	<i>feeling, perception</i> .
Supplicium, ii, n.	<i>punishment</i> .

II. Translate into English.

1. Hirundīnes adventum veris nuntiant. 2. Hirundīnes adventum veris nuntiavērant. 3. Discipŭli laudabuntur. 4. Gallus defectionē solis praedixit. 5. Defectionē lunae praedixit. 6. Defectionē lunae praedicuntur. 7. Omne animal sensus habet. 8. Puēri tacēbant.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. This boy has not observed the law. 2. Good citizens will observe the laws. 3. Let the laws be observed. 4. Who has your book? 5. That boy has my book. 6. You shall have my book. 7. What did you say? 8. I spoke the truth. 9. The truth would have been spoken.

¹ Let be spoken, render by the Latin Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

211. Audio, *I hear*. — STEM, *audi*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
audiō,	audīre,	audivi,	auditum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

SINGULAR.

audiō
audis
audit;

PLURAL.

audimus
auditis
audiunt.

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing.

audiebam
audiebās
audiebat;

audiebāmus
audiebatīs
audiebant.

FUTURE.

I shall or will hear.

audiam
audies
audiet;

audiemus
audietis
audient.

PERFECT.

I heard or have heard.

audivi
audivisti
audivit;

audivimus
audivistis
audiverunt, or erē.

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

audiveram
audiverās
audiverāt;

audiverāmus
audiverātīs
audiverant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have heard.

audiverō
audiveris
audiverit;

audiverimus
audiveritis
audiverint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may hear.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiam	audiamus
audias	audiatis
audiat;	audiant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should hear.

audirem	audiremus
audires	audiretis
audiret;	audirent.

PERFECT.

I may have heard.

audiverim	audiverimus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit;	audiverint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have heard.

audivissem	audivissemus
audivisses	audivissetis
audivisset;	audivissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audi, hear thou;	audite, hear ye.
FUT. audito, thou shalt hear,	audito, ye shall hear,
audito, he shall hear;	audunto, they shall hear.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audire, to hear.	PRES. audiens, hearing.
PERF. audivisse, to have heard.	
FUT. auditurus esse, to be about to hear.	FUT. auditurus, about to hear.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. audiendi, of hearing.	Acc. auditum, to hear.
Dat. audiendō, for hearing.	Abl. auditū, to hear, be heard.
Acc. audiendum, hearing.	
Abl. audiendō, by hearing.	

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

212. Audior, *I am heard.* — STEM, *audi.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
audiōr,	audiri,	auditus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiōr.	audimur
audiris, or rē	audimini
auditur;	audiuntur.

IMPERFECT.

I was heard.

audiebār	audiebāmur
audiebaris, or rē	audiebāmini
audiebātūr;	audiebantūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be heard.

audiār	audiemur
audieris, or rē	audiemini
audietūr;	audientūr.

PERFECT.

I have been heard.

auditus sum ¹	auditi sumus
auditus es	auditi estis
auditus est;	auditi sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been heard.

auditus eram ¹	auditi eramus
auditus eras	auditi eratis
auditus erat;	auditi erant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been heard.

auditus ero ¹	auditi erimus
auditus eris	auditi eritis
auditus erit;	auditi erunt.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may be heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audīār	audīāmūr
audīāris, or rē	audīāmīni
audīātūr;	audīantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or should be heard.

audīrēr	audīrēmūr
audīrēris, or rē	audīrēmīni
audīrētūr;	audīrentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been heard.

audītūs sīm ¹	audītī sīmūs
audītūs sis	audītī sitis
audītūs sit;	audītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or should have been heard.

audītūs essēm ¹	audītī essēmūs
audītūs essēs	audītī essētis
audītūs essēt;	audītī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. audīrē, be thou heard;	audīmīni, be ye heard.
Fut. audītōr, thou shalt be heard, audītōr, he shall be heard;	audiuntōr, they shall be heard.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. audīri, to be heard.	Perf. audītūs, heard.
Perf. audītūs essē, to have been heard.	
Fut. audītūm iri, to be about to be heard.	Ger. ¹ audiendūs, to be heard.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.— ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Custōdiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	to guard.
Dormiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	to sleep.
Erūdiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	to instruct, refine, educate.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Audis, audiebās, audies. 2. Audītis, audiebātis, audietis. 3. Audio, audimus. 4. Audiebā, audiebāmus. 5. Audiam, audiēmus. 6. Audivimus, audiverāmus, audiverimus. 7. Audivi, audiveram, audivero. 8. Audivit, audiverunt. 9. Audiam, audirem, audiverim, audivissem. 10. Audiamus, audirēmus, audiverimus, audivissēmus. 11. Audito, auditōte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I hear, I guard. 2. We hear, we guard. 3. He was hearing, they were sleeping. 4. He was sleeping, they were hearing. 5. He will hear, they will hear. 6. We have slept, you have heard. 7. I had heard, I had guarded. 8. He may hear, they may sleep. 9. They may hear, he may sleep. 10. He might hear, they might sleep. 11. He might sleep, they might hear.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.— ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitat, admōnet, ducit, custōdit. 2. Invitant, admōnent, ducunt, custodiunt. 3. Invitābant, admonēbant, du-

cebant, custodiēbant. 4. Invitābat, admonēbat, ducēbat, custodiēbat. 5. Invitavēram, admonuēram, duxēram, audivēram. 6. Invitaverāmus, admonuerāmus, duxerāmus, audiverāmus. 7. Invitavērim, admonuērim, duxērim, custodivērim. 8. Invitaverunt, admonuerunt, duxerunt, audiverunt.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We invite, we admonish, we lead, we instruct. 2. I was inviting, I was admonishing, I was leading, I was instructing. 3. We were praising, we were obeying, we were speaking, we were instructing. 4. He will blame, he will advise, he will speak, he will instruct. 5. I have invited, you have obeyed, he has led, they have guarded.

+

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XLIV.

four

I. *Vocabulary.*

Arctē, adv.	closely, soundly.
Mūniō, irē, ivi, itūm,	to fortify.
Sermō, sermōnis, m.	discourse, conversation.
Thrasýbúlus, i, m.	Thrasýbulus, Athenian general.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cives urbem custodiēbant. 2. Urbem custodiēmus. 3. Milītes templum custodiunt. 4. Verum auditis. 5. Verum audite. 6. Verum audiverāmus. 7. Verba tua audimus. 8. Verba mea audivisti. 9. Oratiōnem tuam audiui. 10. Sermōnem audiēbam. 11. Puēri arcte dormiunt. 12. Puēri cantum luscinae audiēbant. 13. Thrasýbúlus urbem munivit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

March 1. Do you not hear us? 2. We hear you. 3. Who heard the oration? 4. We heard the oration. 5. The pupils heard the conversation. 6. They did not hear your oration. 7. The citizens are fortifying the city. 8. Who will guard this beautiful city? 9. The brave soldiers will guard the city. 10. Will you guard the temple? 11. We will guard the temple.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLV.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Audimur, audiebāmur, audiēmur. 2. Audiatur, audiantur. 3. Audirer, audirēmur. 4. Auditus sum, auditi sumus. 5. Auditi erāmus, auditus eram. 6. Auditus erit, auditi erunt. 7. Audit, auditur. 8. Audiunt, audiuntur. 9. Audiet, audiētur. 10. Audirem, audirer. 11. Audiēbam, audiēbar. 12. Audiēbat, audiebātur. 13. Audivit, auditus est. 14. Audivērat, auditus erat.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am instructed, we are instructed. 2. He will be instructed, they will be instructed. 3. They have been heard, they have been instructed. 4. They had been heard, he had been instructed. 5. He was instructing, he was instructed. 6. They are instructing, they are instructed. 7. We have heard, you have been heard. 8. You have instructed, we have been instructed. 9. I have heard, you have been heard.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLVI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitāris, admonēris, educēris, custodīris. 2. Invitantur, admonentur, educuntur, custodiuntur. 3. Invitātur, admonētur, educitur, custoditur. 4. Invitabitur, admonebitur, educetur, custodiētur. 5. Invitabatur, admonebatur, educebatur, custodiebatur. 6. Invitātus sum, admonītus sum, eductus sum, custoditus sum. 7. Invitāti erant, admonīti erant, educti erant, custoditi erant. 8. Invitāti essēmus, educti essēmus. 9. Admonītus esses, custoditus esses.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is called, he is terrified, he is led forth, he is guarded. 2. They are called, they are terrified, they are led forth, they are guarded. (3. They will be loved, they will be advised, they will be led, they will be heard. (4. I have been blamed, I have been admonished, you had been ruled, you had been guarded. (5. You had been blamed, I had been admonished. (6. You have been ruled, I have been guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XLVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Bellūm, i, n.
Bēnignē, adv.
Cīvilis, ē.

war.
kindly.
civil.

Egrēgiē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>excellently.</i>
Filiūs, <i>ii, m.</i>	<i>son.</i>
Finiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	<i>to finish, bring to a close.</i>
Lēgatiō, lēgatiōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>embassy.</i>
Vox, vōcis, <i>f.</i>	<i>voice.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Vox audita¹ est. 2. Voces audiuntur. 3. Cantus lusciniæ auditur. 4. Cantus lusciniarum audiētur. 5. Urbs munita erat. 6. Urbes munientur. 7. Templum custodiētur. 8. Tempa custodiuntur. 9. Legatio benigne audita est. 10. Haec legatio benigne audiētur. 11. Verba tua benigne audientur. 12. Filii regis egregie erudiuntur. 13. Bellum civile finitum¹ est.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not the orator heard? 2. The renowned orator was kindly heard. 3. Let the city be fortified.² 4. Let the temples be guarded. 5. The city has been fortified. 6. The temples will be guarded. 7. Let the war be brought to a close. 8. Let the boys be instructed. 9. Let the words of the instructor be heard.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Athēniensis, <i>is, m. and f.</i>	<i>an Athenian.</i>
Cānis, cānis, <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>dog.</i>
Cōlō, cōlēre, cōlui, cultūm,	<i>to practise, cultivate.</i>
Cūm, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>with.</i>

¹ Why *audita* and *finitum*, instead of *auditus* and *finitus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

² *Let be fortified* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

Firmō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to strengthen.</i>
Grex, grēgis, <i>m.</i>	<i>herd, flock.</i>
Illustrō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to illumine.</i>
Jungō, jungērē, junxi, junctūm,	<i>to join.</i>
Lābōr, lābōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>labor.</i>
Mōdestiā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>modesty.</i>
Ovis, ōvis, <i>f.</i>	<i>sheep.</i>
Portūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>port, harbor.</i>
Prūdentiā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>prudence.</i>
Terrā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>earth.</i>
Vāletūdō, vāletūdīnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>health.</i>
Vāriētās, vāriētātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>variety.</i>
Viōlō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>violate.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sol terram illustrat. 2. Modestia puēros ornat. 3. Discipūli memoriā exercēt. 4. Discipūli tui memoriā exercēbant. 5. Canes gregem custodiēbant. 6. Greges ovium custodiuntur. 7. Praeceptōres juventūtem erudient. 8. Labor valetūdīnem tuam firmābit. 9. Variētās nos delectat. 10. Athenienses portum munivērunt. 11. Philosophia nos erudīvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Good men love virtue. 2. Virtue will always¹ be loved. 3. Let virtue be always practised. 4. We will always practise virtue. 5. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state. | 6. They will be punished. 7. Will you instruct these boys? 8. We will instruct good boys. 9. Who² led this army into Italy? 10. Hannibal led the army into Italy.

¹ For the syntax of adverbs, and for their place in the Latin sentence, see Rule LI. and note 4, p. 72.

² Which form of the Interrogative should be used, *quis* or *quī*? See 188.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — VERBS IN IO.

221. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Present Indicative in *io, ior*, like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. They are inflected with the endings of the Fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels.

ACTIVE VOICE.

222. *Cāpio, I take.* — STEM, *cāp*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
<i>cāpiō,</i>	<i>cāpērē,</i>	<i>cēpī,</i>	<i>captūm.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>cāpiō, cāpis, cāpit;</i>	<i> cāpimūs, cāpitīs, cāpiunt.</i>
IMPERFECT.	
<i>cāpiēbām, -iēbās, -iēbāt;</i>	<i> cāpiēbāmūs, -iēbātīs, -iēbant.</i>
FUTURE.	
<i>cāpiām, -iēs, -iēt;</i>	<i> cāpiēmūs, -iētīs, -ient.</i>
PERFECT.	
<i>cēpī, -istī, -it;</i>	<i> cēpimūs, -istīs, -ērunt, or ērē.</i>
PLUPERFECT.	
<i>cēpērām, -ērās, -ērāt;</i>	<i> cēpērāmūs, -ērātīs, -erant.</i>
FUTURE PERFECT.	
<i>cēpērō, -erīs, -erīt;</i>	<i> cēpērīmūs, -erītīs, -erint.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>cāpiām, -iās, -iāt;</i>	<i> cāpiāmūs, -iātīs, -iant.</i>
IMPERFECT.	
<i>cāpērēm, -ērēs, -ērēt;</i>	<i> cāpērēmūs, -ērētīs, -erent.</i>
PERFECT.	
<i>cēpērīm, -erīs, -erīt;</i>	<i> cēpērīmūs, -erītīs, -erint.</i>
PLUPERFECT.	
<i>cēpissēm, -issēs, -issēt;</i>	<i> cēpissēmūs, -issētīs, -issent.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES. cāpē;	cāpītē.
FUT. cāpītō,	cāpītōte,
cāpītō;	cāpiuntō.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
PRES. cāpērē.	PRES. cāpiens.
PERF. cēpissē.	
FUT. captūrus essē.	FUT. captūrus.

GERUND.	SUPINE.
Gen. cāpiendī.	
Dat. cāpiendō.	
Acc. cāpiendū.	Acc. captū.
Abi. cāpiendō.	Abi. captū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

223. Capior, *I am taken.* — STEM, *cāp.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
cāpiōr,	cāpi,	captūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
cāpiōr, cāpēris, cāpītūr;	cāpīmūr, cāpīmīni, cāpiuntūr.
IMPERFECT.	
cāpiēbār, -iēbāris, -iēbātūr;	cāpiēbāmūr, -iēbāmīni, -iēbantūr.
FUTURE.	
cāpiār, -iēris, -iētūr;	cāpiēmūr, -iēmīni, -ientūr.
PERFECT.	
captūs sūm, ēs, est;	captī sūmūs, estīs, sunt.
PLUPERFECT.	
captūs ērām, ērās, ērāt;	captī ērāmūs, ērātīs, ērant.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
captūs ērō, ēris, ērit;	captī ērimūs, ēritīs, ērunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.		PRESENT.	PLURAL.
cāpiār, -iāris, -iātūr;			cāpiāmūr, -iāminī, -iantūr.
		IMPERFECT.	
cāpērēr, -ērēris, -ērētūr;			cāpērēmūr, -ērēminī, -ērentūr.
		PERFECT.	
captūs sīm, sis, sīt;			capti sīmūs, sītis, sint.
		PLUPERFECT.	
captūs essēm, essēs, essēt;			capti essēmūs, essētis, essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cāpērē;		cāpimīnī.
FUT. cāpitōr, cāpitōr;		cāpiuntōr.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. cāpi.
PERF. captūs essē.
FUT. captūm irī.

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. captūs.
GER. cāpiendūs. ¹

EXERCISE XLIX.

I. Vocabulary.

A, āb, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>from, by.</i>
Accipiō, accipērē, accēpi, acceptūm,	<i>to receive.</i>
Bellūm, ī, n.	<i>war.</i>
Cāpiō, cāpērē, cēpi, captūm,	<i>to take, capture.</i>
Carthāgō, Carthāginis, f.	<i>Carthage, city in Africa.</i>
Cornēlius, ii, m.	<i>Cornelius, a proper name.</i>
Gallūs, ī, m.	<i>Gaul, a Gaul.²</i>

¹ The pupil will observe that the conjugation of *Capio* is somewhat peculiar, combining certain characteristics of the *Fourth Conjugation* with others of the *Third*. He should now carefully compare it with the conjugation of *Rego* and with that of *Audio*, and note with accuracy both the differences and the resemblances.

² The Gauls were a people inhabiting the country of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.

g. m. C.

Jāciō, jācērē, jēci, jactūm,
Lāpis, lapidis, *m.*
Lux, lūcis, *f.*
Mūrūs, *i, m.*
Publiūs, *i, m.*
Rēgūlūs, *i, m.*
Telūm, *i, n.*
Trōjā, *ae, f.*

to cast, throw, hurl.
stone.
light.
wall.
Publius, a proper name.
Regulus, Roman general.
javelin.
Troy, city in Asia Minor.

n
g
t
a
a
r
a

II. Translate into English.

1. Graeci Trojam capiēbant. 2. Trojam cepērunt. 3. Troja capta¹ est. 4. Troja capta erat. 5. Regūlus ipse captus est. 6. Belli duces capientur. 7. Haec urbs capiētur. 8. Illam urbem capiēmus. 9. Roma a Gallis² capta erat. 10. Galli Romam cepērunt. 11. Scipio multas civitates cepit. 12. Luna lucem a sole accipit. 13. Lucem a sole accipimus. 14. Tuam³ epistolam accēpi. 15. Milites tela jaciēbant.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. We were taking the city. 2. The city will be taken. 3. The city has been taken. 4. The cities will be taken. 5. The cities have been taken. 6. Who⁴ took Carthage? 7. Publius Cornelius Scipio took Carthage. 8. Have you not⁵ received my letter? 9. I have received your letter. 10. Have you not received five letters? 11. We have received ten letters.

¹ For the agreement of the participle in the compound tenses with the subject, see Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

² See Rule XXXII., page 26.

³ What is the usual place of the Possessive Pronoun? See page 77, note 1. In this sentence, *tuam* precedes its noun because it is emphatic.

⁴ Which form of the Interrogative Pronoun should be used, *quis* or *qui*? See 188.

⁵ Which Interrogative Particle should be used? See 346, II. 1, page 59.

PART THIRD.

S Y N T A X.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

SECTION I.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their STRUCTURE, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound*:

I. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses but a single thought:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made the world. Cic.

II. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses two (or more) thoughts, so related that one is dependent upon the other:

Dōnec ēris fēlix, multos nūmērābis āmicos; So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends. Ovid.

1. CLAUSES. — In this example, two simple sentences, (1) "*You will be prosperous,*" and (2) "*You will number many friends,*" are so united that the first only specifies the time of the second: *You will number many friends, (when?) so long as you are prosperous.* The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members*.

III. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts:

Sol ruit, et montes umbrantur, The sun descends, and the mountains are shaded. Virg.

346. In their USE, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory*.

I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion :

Miltiades accusatus est, Miltiades was accused. Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

Quis non paupertatem extimescit, Who does not fear poverty ? Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word, — either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne, nonne, num* :

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information : *Scribitne, Is he writing ? Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes* : *Nonne scribit, Is he not writing ?*

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no* : *Num scribit, Is he writing ?*

III. An IMPERATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty :

Iustitiam cole, Cultivate justice. Cic.

IV. An EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE has the form of an exclamation :

Reliquit quos viros, What heroes he has left ! Cic.

SECTION II.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied :

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.
2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject :

Cluilius moritur, Cluilius dies. Liv.

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *moritur* the predicate.

348. The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers :

In his castris Cluilius, Albānus rex, mōritur; *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius, Albānus rex*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and in *his castris moritur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

349. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE. — The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

350. SIMPLE AND COMPLEX. — The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex:

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.¹

SIMPLE SUBJECT.

351. The subject of a sentence must be a noun, or some word or words used as a noun:

*Rex*² dēcrēvit, *The king decreed.* Nep. *Ego*² ad te scribo, *I write to you.* Cic.

SIMPLE PREDICATE.

353. The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

Miltiādes est accūsātus,³ *Miltiades was accused.* Nep. *Tu es testis*, *You are a witness.* Cic. *Fortūna caeca est*, *Fortune is blind.* Cic.

1. Like *Sum*, several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective*.⁴

¹ Thus, in the example given above, the simple subject is *Cluilius*; the complex, *Cluilius, Albānus rex*; the simple predicate, *mōritur*; the complex, in *his castris moritur*.

² In these examples, the noun *rex* and the pronoun *ego*, used as a noun, are the subjects.

³ In the first of these examples, the predicate is the verb, *est accūsātus*; in the second, the noun and copula, *est testis*; and in the third, the adjective and copula, *caeca est*.

⁴ Thus *testis*, in the second example, is a *Predicate Noun*, and *caeca*, in the third, is a *Predicate Adjective*.

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.¹

362. A Predicate Noun² denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE:

Ego sum nuntius,² *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est declaratus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

EXERCISE I.

I. Vocabulary.

Amnis, amnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>river.</i>
Creō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to create, make, elect.</i>
Graeciā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Greece.</i>
Impērātōr, impērātōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>commander.</i>
Lātinūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Latinus, Italian king.</i>
Lāvinia, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Lavinia, a proper name.</i>
Mālūm, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>evil.</i>
Nōmīnō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to call, name.</i>
Nūmā, ae, <i>m.</i>	<i>Numa, Roman king.</i>
Rhēnūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>the Rhine, river in Europe.</i>
Serviūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Servius, Roman king.</i>
Stultitiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>folly.</i>
Tūm, <i>adv.</i>	<i>then, at that time.</i>

¹ In illustrating in the subsequent pages the leading principles of the Latin Syntax, we shall take up the most common Rules in the order in which they stand in the Grammar. In doing so, we shall repeat in their proper places those Rules which we have had occasion to anticipate in the previous Exercises.

² See 354, 1; also Rule I. note, p. 59.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicĕro *consul*¹ fuit.² 2. Cicĕro *orĕtor* fuit. 3. Cicĕro tum³ erat³ *orĕtor* clarissĭmus.⁴ 4. Puer *orĕtor* erit. 5. Numa erat rex. 6. Numa rex¹ creĕtus est. 7. Cato imperĕtor fuit. 8. Cato magnus imperĕtor fuit. 9. Scipio consul creĕtus est. 10. Scipio consul fuĕrat. 11. Stultitia est malum. 12. Gloria est fructus virtutis. 13. Graecia artium⁵ mater nominĕtur.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Rhine is a large *river*. 2. Rome was a beautiful *city*. 3. Cato was a wise *man*. 4. Your father is a wise man. 5. Lavinia was the daughter of the king. 6. Latinus was king. 7. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus. 8. Tullia was the daughter of Servius.

APPOSITIVES.

RULE II. — *Appositives.*

363. An Appositive⁶ agrees with its Subject in CASE:

Cluilius rex⁶ mŕitur, *Cluilius the king dies*. Liv. Urbes Carthĕgo⁶ atque Nŕmantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia*. Cic.

¹ Predicate Noun. See Rule I. For Model for parsing Predicate Nouns, see p. 59.

² For the *place* of the verb with Predicate Nouns, see note on *fuit* under Exercise XIX.

³ Adverb qualifying *erat*. See Rule LI. p. 72.

⁴ See 162; also Rule XXXIII. p. 34.

⁵ *Artium* depends upon *mater*. See Rule XVI. p. 21.

⁶ See 363, note, p. 15; also Model, p. 16. *Rex*, *Carthĕgo*, and *Nŕmantia* are all Appositives.

EXERCISE LI.

I. Vocabulary.

Alexandër, Alexandri, <i>m.</i>	Alexander, the Great.
Conjux, conjūgis, <i>m. and f.</i>	wife, husband.
Epirūs, <i>i, f.</i>	Epirus, country in Greece.
Erūditūs, ā, ūm,	learned, instructed in.
Hannō, Hannōnis, <i>m.</i>	Hanno, Carthaginian general.
Justūs, ā, ūm,	just, upright.
Mācēdōniā, ae, <i>f.</i>	Macedonia, Macedon.
Nēpōs, nēpōtis, <i>m.</i>	grandson.
Paulūs, <i>i, m.</i>	Paulus, Roman consul.
Philippūs, <i>i, m.</i>	Philip, king of Macedon.
Pyrrhūs, <i>i, m.</i>	Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.
Vulnērō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to wound.

II. Translate into English.

1. Cicēro, eruditissimus homo,¹ consul² fuit. 2. Numa, justissimus vir, erat rex. 3. Ancus, Numae nepos,¹ rex fuit. 4. Hanno dux captus est.³ 5. Pyrrhus, Epiri rex, vulneratus est. 6. Philippus, rex Macedoniae, Athenienses superavit. 7. Paulus consul¹ regem superavit. 8. Philosophia, mater bonarum artium, nos erudit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Tullia, the daughter¹ of Servius, was the wife² of Tarquin. 2. Servius, the father of Tullia, was a king. 3. Scipio, the leader of the Romans, took Carthage. 4. Scipio the general was praised. 5. Philip, king of Macedonia, was the father of Alexander. 6. Alexander, the son of Philip, was king of Macedonia.

¹ Appositive. See Rule II. For Model for parsing Appositives, see p. 16.

² Predicate Noun. See Rule I.

³ See 222.

SECTION II.

NOMINATIVE.

364. CASES.—Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows :

I. Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II. Vocative,	Case of Address.
III. Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV. Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V. Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI. Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations. ¹

RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative :

Servius regnāvit, Servius reigned. Liv. Pātent portae, The gates are open. Cic. Rex vicit, The king conquered. Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively :

Ego rēges ejēci, I have banished kings. Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. — See 460, 2, p. 54.

EXERCISE LII.

I. Vocabulary.

Libertās, libertātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>liberty.</i>
Opulentūs, ā, ūm,	<i>rich, opulent.</i>
Quōtidie, <i>adv.</i>	<i>daily.</i>
Vitiūm, ii, <i>n.</i>	<i>fault, vice.</i>
Oppidum, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>town, city.</i>

¹ This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because it is thought it will best present the force of the several cases, and their relation to each other.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Italia*¹ liberāta² est. 2. *Urbs* Roma liberāta erat. 3. Haec *urbs* clarissīma liberabītur. 4. Haec *urbs* opulentissīma est capta. 5. Virtus quotidie laudātur. 6. Virtūtes semper laudabuntur. 7. Sapientia semper est laudāta. 8. Libertas semper laudabītur. 9. Omnia hostium oppida expugnāta sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not *Philip* wounded? 2. *Philip*, king of Macedonia, was wounded. 3. Many *soldiers* were wounded. 4. Did not the soldiers fight bravely? 5. The soldiers fought bravely. 6. Will not the laws be observed? 7. The laws have been observed. 8. They will be observed.

SECTION III.

VOCATIVE.

RULE IV. — Case of Address.

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative:

Perge, Laeli,³ Proceed, *Laelius*. Cic. Quid est, Cātīlina,³ Why is it, *Catiline*? Cic. Tuum est, Servi,³ regnum. The kingdom is yours, *Servius*. Liv.

EXERCISE LIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Auditōr, auditōris, m.	hearer, auditor.
Cārūs, ā, ūm,	dear.
Jūvēnis, is, m. and f.	a youth, young man.
Lēgātūs, i, m.	ambassador.
Sālūtō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to salute.

¹ Subject of *liberāta est*. See Rule III. For Model for parsing Subjects, see p. 57.

² Why *liberāta* rather than *liberātus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

³ *Laeli*, *Cātīlina*, and *Servi* are all in the Vocative by this Rule. *Laeli* is for *Laelie*; and *Servi*, for *Servie*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Te, *Scipio*,¹ salutāmus. 2. Vos, *amīci*¹ carissīmi,² salūto. 3. Vos, *audītōres* omnes, salutāmus. 4. Verba mea, *judices*, audite. 5. Haec verba, legāti, audite. 6. Vos, milītes, hanc urbem clarissīmam custodite. 7. Milītes¹ fortissīmi, patriam vestram liberāte. 8. Vestram virtutem, juvēnes, laudāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. *Boys*,¹ hear the words of your father. 2. *Judges*, you shall hear the truth. 3. *Father*, have we not spoken the truth? 4. You, boys, have spoken the truth. 5. Soldiers, you have fought bravely. 6. You, brave soldiers, have saved your country. 7. Pupils, I praise your diligence.

SECTION IV.

ACCUSATIVE.

RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object³ of an action is put in the Accusative :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world*.⁴ Cic. Libēra rem publicā, *Free the republic*. Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni salūtem dēfendite, *Defend the safety of the Roman people*. Cic.

¹ In the Vocative, according to Rule IV. No special Model for parsing is deemed necessary, as all nouns are parsed substantially in the same way; though different Rules are, of course, assigned for different cases. See Directions for Parsing, p. 15; also Model, p. 16.

The Vocative is not often the first word in the sentence, though it is sometimes thus placed, as in the seventh sentence in this Exercise.

² See 162.

³ See note on Direct Object, p. 70.

⁴ See note on the position of the Object in the Latin sentence, p. 70.

EXERCISE LIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Flāminius, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Flaminius</i> , Roman general.
Marcellus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Marcellus</i> , Roman general.
Poenus, ā, ūm,	<i>Carthaginian</i> .
Poenus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>a Carthaginian</i> .
Sanctus, ā, ūm,	<i>holy, sacred</i> .
Sicilia, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Sicily</i> , the island of.
Spōliū, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to rob, spoil, despoil</i> .
Syrācūsae, ārūm, <i>f. plur.</i>	<i>Syracuse</i> , city in Sicily.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Alexander multas *urbes*¹ expugnāvit. 2. Italia pulchras *urbes* habuit. 3. Hostes *templa* spoliābant. 4. *Templa* sanctissima spoliavērunt. 5. Hannibal Flaminium¹ consulem² superāvit. 6. Poeni Siciliam occupavērunt. 7. Marcellus³ magnam hujus insulae⁴ partem cepit. 8. Marcellus Syracūsas,¹ nobilissimam urbem,² expugnāvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you not⁵ love your *parents*?¹ 2. We love our *parents*. 3. You practise *virtue*. 4. Our pupils will practise *virtue*. 5. Did not Rome have beautiful temples? 6. Rome had beautiful temples. 7. Have not the enemy⁶ taken the city? 8. They have taken the beautiful city. 9. They will plunder all the temples.

¹ Direct Object, in the Accusative, according to Rule V. For Model for parsing, see p. 71.

² Appositive. See Rule II. 363.

³ Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

⁴ *Hujus insulae*, of this island; i.e., of Sicily. Observe the position of the Genitive between the adjective *magnam* and its noun *partem*. See note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX. II. 10.

⁵ See 346, II. 1.

⁶ The Latin word must be in the plural.

ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

RULE VIII.—Accusative of Time and Space.

378. DURATION OF TIME, and EXTENT OF SPACE, are expressed by the Accusative :

Römulus septem et triginta regnāvit annos,¹ *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambūlare, *To walk five miles.* Cic. Pēdes octōgintā distāre, *To be eighty feet distant.* Caes. Nix quattuor pēdes¹ alta, *Snow four feet deep.* Liv.

EXERCISE LV.

I. Vocabulary.

Aggēr, aggēris, m.	mound, rampart.
Ambūlē, arē, āvi, ātūm,	to walk.
Centūm,	hundred.
Glādiūs, ii, m.	sword.
Lācēdaemōniūs, ii, m.	a Lacedaemonian, Spartan.
Lātūs, ā, ūm,	broad, wide.
Longūs, ā, ūm,	long.
Mēsis, mēsis, m.	month.
Nox, noctis, f.	night.
Octōgintā,	eighty.
Pēs, pēdis, m.	foot.
Quinquāgintā,	fifty.
Regnō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	to reign.
Vigilō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	to watch, be awake.

II. Translate into English.

1. Lacedaemonii pacem sex annos² servavērunt. 2. Magnam noctis partem² vigilavēram. 3. Puer octo horas

¹ Annos denotes *Duration of Time*, while millia and pedes denote *Extent of Space*. They are all in the Accusative by this Rule.

² In the Accusative denoting *Duration of Time*. See Rule VIII. No special Model for parsing is necessary. The pupil will be guided by previous directions and Models.

dormivit. 4. *Latinus multos annos regnāvit.* 5. *In Italiā sex menses fuīmus.* 6. *In illā urbe decem dies fuīmus.* 7. *Agger octoginta pedes¹ latus fuit.* 8. *Hic gladius sex pedes longus est.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Did you not walk two *hours*? 2. We walked three *hours*. 3. Did you not sleep six *hours*? 4. We slept eight hours. 5. The soldiers guarded the city ten months. 6. Were you not in the city four months? 7. We were in the city five months. 8. The mound was fifty feet high.

ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT.

RULE IX.—Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative:

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, The messenger returns to Rome. Liv. *Plāto Tārentum² vēnit, Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. *Fūgit Tarquinios,² He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic.

EXERCISE LVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Athēnae, ātūm, f. plur.</i>	<i>Athens, capital of Attica.</i>
<i>Fūgiō, fūgērē, fūgi, fūgitūm,</i>	<i>to flee, fly, run away.</i>
<i>Lūsandēr, Lūsandri, m.</i>	<i>Lysander, Spartan general.</i>
<i>Miltiādēs, is, m.</i>	<i>Miltiades, Athenian general.</i>
<i>Nāvīgō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,</i>	<i>to sail, sail to.</i>

¹ In the Accusative, denoting *Extent of Space*.

² *Romam, Tarentum, and Tarquinios* are all names of towns used as the *Limit of Motion*; i.e., the motion is represented as ending in those towns. They are in the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

Rēducō, rēducere, rēdūxi, rēductum,	to lead back.
Rēvocō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	to recall.
Spartā, ae, f.	Sparta, capital of Laconia.
Tārentūm, i, n.	Tarentum, Italian town.
Thēbānus, ā, ūm,	Theban.
Thēbānus, i, m.	a Theban.

II. Translate into English.

1. Cicero *Romam*¹ revocātus est. 2. Consules *Romam* revocāti sunt. 3. Hannibal *Carthaginem*¹ revocātus erat. 4. Lysander *Athēnas*¹ navigāvit. 5. Pyrrhus Tarentum fugātus est. 6. Consul regem Tarentum fugāvit. 7. Thebani exercitum Spartam ducunt. 8. Miltiades exercitum Athēnas reduxit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Who fled to Carthage?² 2. Did not the enemy flee to Carthage? 3. They fled to Carthage. 4. Will not the army be led back to Rome?² 5. The army has been led back to Rome. 6. The commander led the army to Athens.

SECTION V.

DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used,

- I. With Verbs.
- II. With Adjectives.
- III. With their Derivatives, — Adverbs and Substantives.

DATIVE WITH VERBS.

383. INDIRECT OBJECT. — A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the

¹ In the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

² The Latin word will be in the Accusative, in accordance with Rule IX.

action, — that TO or FOR which something is or is done. A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

RULE XII — Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative :

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs :

Tempōri¹ cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic. Sibi timuērant, *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. Lābōri stūdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Nōbis¹ vīta dāta est, *Life has been granted to us.* Cic. Nūmītōri dēditur, *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Pons īter hostibus² dēdit, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. Lēges civitātibus suis scripsērunt, *They prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

EXERCISE LVII.

I. Vocabulary.

Carthāgīniensīs, ē,	Carthaginian.
Carthāgīniensīs, is, m. and f.	a Carthaginian.
Cōnōn, Cōnōnīs, m.	Conon, Athenian gen'l.
Dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbui, dēbitūm,	to owe.
Displiceō, displicere, displicui, displicitūm,	to displease.
Dōnō, arē, avi, atūm,	to give.
Gens, gentīs, f.	race.
Grātiā, ae, f.	favor, gratitude, thanks.
Lābōrō, arē, avi, atūm,	to strive for.

¹ Tempōri, sibi, and labōri are in the Dative with the Intransitive verbs *cedit*, *timuērant* (intransitive here), and *student*; while *nobis* and *Numitōri* are in the Dative with the Passive verbs *data est* and *deditur*.

² Hostibus is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *iter*, with the Transitive verb *dedit*. In the same way, *civitātibus* is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *leges*, with the Transitive verb *scripsērunt*.

Monstrō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to show, point out.</i>
Plāceō, plācērē, plācui, plācītūm,	<i>to please.</i>
Sēnectūs, sēnectūtis, <i>f.</i>	<i>old age.</i>
Sententiā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>opinion.</i>
Serviō, servirē, servivi, servitūm,	<i>to serve.</i>
Viā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>way, road.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Cives legibus¹ parent. 2. Multae Italiae civitates Romanis parēbant. 3. Haec sententia Caesari¹ placuit. 4. Illa sententia Caesari displicuit. 5. Milites gloriae labōrant. 6. Hoc consilium Caesari nuntiātum est. 7. Nostra consilia hostibus nuntiāta sunt. 8. Tibi² magnam gratiam habēmus. 9. Habeo senectūti magnam gratiam. 10. Conon pecuniam civibus donāvit. 11. Pastor puēro viam monstrāvit. 12. Tibi viam monstrābo. 13. Romāni Carthaginiensibus bellum indixērunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Did I not obey my³ father?¹ 2. You obeyed your father. 3. We will obey the laws of the state. 4. Do not the citizens serve the king? 5. They have served the king. 6. Will you not serve the state? 7. We will serve the state. 8. Will you not tell me (to me⁴) the truth?⁵ 9. I have told you (to you) the truth. 10. Will you show

¹ Indirect Object, in the Dative, according to Rule XII. I.

² Indirect Object, in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *gratiam* with the Transitive verb *habēmus*, according to Rule XII. II.

In the arrangement of Objects, the *Indirect* generally precedes the *Direct*, as in this sentence; though the order is sometimes reversed, as in the tenth sentence in this Exercise.

³ In examples like this, the Possessive pronoun may either be expressed or omitted, as it is often omitted in Latin when not emphatic.

⁴ Dative. See Rule XII. II.

⁵ Accusative. See Rule XII. II.

me (to me) the way? 11. We will show you the way.
 12. Did they declare war against the Romans? 13.
 They had declared war against the Romans.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XIV.—Dative.

391. With Adjectives, the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative :

Patriae solum omnibus¹ carum est, The soil of their country is dear to all. Cic. *Id aptum est tempori, This is adapted to the time.*
 Cic. *Omni aetati mors est communis, Death is common to every age.*
 Cic. *Canis similis lupo est, A dog is similar to a wolf.* Cic. *Naturae accommodatum, Adapted to nature.* Cic. *Graeciae utile, Useful to Greece.* Nep.

1. ADJECTIVES WITH DATIVE. — The most common are those signifying :

Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in *bilis*.

EXERCISE LVIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Amicus, a, ūm,	friendly.
Hispania, ae, f.	Spain.
Multitudo, multitudinis, f.	multitude.
Saguntum, i, n.	Saguntum, city in Spain.
Similis, e,	like.
Solum, i, n.	soil.
Veritas, veritatis, f.	verity, truth.

¹ Dative, showing to whom the soil is dear, — dear TO ALL. In the same way in these examples, *tempori* is used with *aptum*, *aetati* with *communis*, *lupo* with *similis*, *naturae* with *accommodatum*, and *Graeciae* with *utile*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Parentes *nobis*¹ cari sunt. 2. Patria *nobis* cara est.
3. Patria *tibi*¹ erit carissima. 4. Patriae solum *nobis* carum est.
5. Hannibal exercitui carus fuit. 6. Victoria Romānis grata fuit.
7. Libertas multitudīni grata est. 8. Veritas nobis gratissima est.
9. Jucunda mihi oratio fuit. 10. Saguntum Romānis amicum fuit.
11. Hannibal Saguntum,² Hispaniae civitatem ³ Romānis ⁴ amicam,⁵ expugnāvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not these books be useful *to you*? 2. They are useful *to us*.
3. They will be useful *to you*. 4. This law has been useful to the state.
5. Will not this book be acceptable to you? 6. That book will be acceptable to me.
7. This book will be most acceptable ⁶ to my brother.

SECTION VI.

GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes *source* or *cause*; but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *of*, and expresses various adjective relations.

GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

¹ Dative, according to Rule XIV.

² Accusative. See Rule V.

³ Appositive, in agreement with Saguntum. See Rule II.

⁴ Dative with *amicam*. See Rule XIV.

⁵ *Amicam* agrees with *civitatem*. See Rule XXXIII. p. 34.

⁶ See 162.

Cātōnis¹ orātiōnes, *Cato's orations*. Cic. Castra hostium, *The camp of the enemy*. Liv. Mors Hāmilcāris, *The death of Hamilcar*. Liv. See 363.

EXERCISE LIX.

I. Vocabulary.

Commūnis, ē,	common.
Conscientiā, ae, f.	consciousness.
Dulcis, ē,	sweet, pleasant.
Hōnōr, hōnōris, m.	honor.
Orbis, orbis, m.	circle, world.
Orbis terrārū, ²	the world.
Parvū, ō, ūm,	small.
Principiū, ii, n.	beginning.
Rectū, i, n.	rectitude, right.
Sōcrātēs, is, m.	Socrates, Athenian philosopher.

II. Translate into English.

1. *Justitia virtūtum*³ regīna est. 2. *Sapientia est mater omnium bonarum artium*. 3. *Socrātes parens philosophiae* fuit. 4. *Virtus veri hōnōris*⁴ mater est. 5. *Patria communis*⁵ est omnium nostrum⁶ parens. 6. *Roma orbis*⁷ terrarū caput fuit. 7. *Omnium rerum principia parva sunt*. 8. *Conscientia recti est praeium virtutis dulcissimum*.

¹ *Cātōnis* qualifies *oratiōnes*, and is in the Genitive, in accordance with the Rule.

² Literally *the circle of lands*.

³ Genitive, depending upon *regīna*. Rule XVI.

⁴ Genitive, depending upon *mater*.

⁵ *Commūnis* agrees with *parens*. See Rule XXXIII.

⁶ Genitive, depending upon *parens*.

⁷ *Orbis* depends upon *caput*, and *terrārū* upon *orbis*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The orations of Cicero are praised.
2. The courage of the soldiers saved the city.
3. The crown of the king was golden.
4. The sword of the general was beautiful.
5. The son of the consul violated the laws of the state.
6. The citizens will observe the laws of the state.

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XVII—Genitive.

399. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning :

Avidus laudis,¹ *Desirous of praise*. Cic. *Otii cūpidus*, *Desirous of leisure*. Liv. *Amans sui virtus*, *Virtue fond of itself*. Cic. *Efficiens voluptātis*, *Productive of pleasure*. Cic. *Glōriæ mēmor*, *Mindful of glory*. Liv.

1. FORCE OF THIS GENITIVE.—The genitive here retains its usual force,—*of, in respect of*,—and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE.—The most common are

1) Verbals in **ax**, and participles in **ans** and **ens** used adjectively.

2) Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection, participation, mastery, fulness*, and their contraries.

EXERCISE LX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Amans, amantīs,
Avidūs, ā, ūm,

loving, fond of.
desirous of, eager for.

¹ *Laudis* completes the meaning of *avidus*; *desirous* (of what?) of *praise*. It is in the Genitive, by this Rule. In the same way, *otii* completes the meaning of *cupidus*; *sui*, of *amans*; *voluptātis*, of *efficiens*; and *glōriæ*, of *mēmor*.

Certāmen, certāminis, <i>n.</i>	<i>contest, strife, battle.</i>
Cūpidūs, ū, ūm,	<i>desirous of.</i>
Fons, fontis, <i>m.</i>	<i>fountain.</i>
Laus, laudis, <i>f.</i>	<i>praise.</i>
Nōvītās, nōvītātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>novelty.</i>
Pēritūs, ū, ūm,	<i>skilled in.</i>
Piscis, piscis, <i>m.</i>	<i>fish.</i>
Plēnūs, ū, ūm,	<i>full.</i>
Vōluptās, vōluptātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>pleasure.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Romāni avidi *gloriae*¹ fuērunt. 2. Homīnes *novitātis* avidi sunt. 3. Numa *pacis*¹ erat amantissimus.² 4. *Patriae* amantissimi sumus. 5. Consul *gloriae* cupidus erat. 6. Cicero *gloriae* cupidissimus² fuit. 7. Milites erant avidissimi certāminis. 8. Fons piscium plenissimus est. 9. Athenienses belli navālis peritissimi fuērunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Boys are fond of *praise*. 2. Are you not fond of *praise*? 3. We are fond of *praise*. 4. Were not the Athenians fond of *pleasure*? 5. They were always fond of *pleasure*. 6. They are desirous of *glory*. 7. Are you not desirous of a *victory*? 8. We are desirous of a *victory*.

SECTION VII.

ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive; but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *from, by, in, with*, and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used with Verbs and Adjectives; while the Genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393.

¹ Genitive, completing the meaning of the adjective. See Rule XVII.

² See 162.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS.

RULE XXI.—Cause, Manner, Means.

414. Cause, Manner, and Means¹ are denoted by the Ablative :

Ars utilitāte laudātur, An art is praised because of its usefulness. Cic. *Glōriā dūcitur, He is led by glory.* Cic. *Duobus modis fit, It is done in two ways.* Cic. *Sol omnia luce collustrat, The sun illumines all things with its light.* Cic. *Apri dentibus se tūtantur, Boars defend themselves with their tusks.* Cic. *Aeger erat vulneribus, He was ill in consequence of his wounds.* Nep. *Laetus sorte tua, Pleased with your lot.* Hor.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This Ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

2. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.—This designates that *by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which*, any thing is or is done.

3. ABLATIVE OF MANNER.—This Ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the preposition *cum* ; but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner*, — *mōre, ordine, ratiōne*, etc., — occur without such accompaniment :

Vi summa, With the greatest violence. Nep. *Mōre Persarum, In the manner of the Persians.* Nep. *Cum silentio audire, To hear in silence.* Liv. *Id ordine facere, To do it in order, or properly.* Cic.

¹ It is not always possible to distinguish between *Cause, Manner, and Means*. Sometimes the same Ablative may involve both *Cause* and *Means*, or both *Means* and *Manner*. Still the pupil should be taught to determine in each instance, as far as possible, what is the real force of the Ablative. Thus in the examples, *utilitāte* denotes cause, because of its usefulness ; *glōriā*, means, with perhaps the accessory notion of cause ; *modis*, manner ; *luce*, means ; *dentibus*, means ; *vulneribus*, cause, with perhaps the accessory notion of means ; and *sorte*, cause and means.

4. ABLATIVE OF MEANS. — This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed.

5. ABLATIVE OF AGENT. — This designates the Person by whom any thing is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the preposition *a* or *ab*:

Occisus est a Thēbānis, *He was slain by the Thebans.*¹ Nep.

EXERCISE LXI.

I. Vocabulary.

Mūnūs, mūnērīs, <i>n.</i>	<i>reward, gift.</i>
Nātūrā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>nature.</i>
Pellis, pellīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>skin, hide.</i>
Quōtidianūs, ā, ūm,	<i>daily.</i>
Scythae, ārum, <i>m. plur.</i>	<i>Scythians.</i>
Triumphō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to triumph.</i>
Usūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>use.</i>
Vestiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	<i>to clothe.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Consul *virtūte*² laudātus est. 2. Urbs *natūrā*³ munita erat. 3. Haec urbs *arte* muniētur. 4. *Muneribus*⁴ delectāmur. 5. Roma Camilli *virtūte* est servāta. 6. Camillus hostes magno proelio superāvit. 7. Scipio patrem singulāri *virtūte* servāvit. 8. Scipio ingenti gloriā⁵ triumphāvit.⁵ 9. Scythae corpōra pellibus vestiēbant. ~~✗~~

¹ By comparing this example with those under the Rule, the second for instance, it will be seen that the Latin construction distinguishes the person by whom any thing is done from the means by which it is done, designating the former by the Ablative with *a* or *ab* (*a Thēbānis*, by the Thebans), and the latter by the Ablative without a preposition; *gloriā*, by glory.

² Ablative of Cause, according to Rule XXI.

³ Ablative of Means.

⁴ Ablative of Manner.

⁵ The privilege of entering Rome in grand triumphal procession was sometimes awarded to eminent Roman generals as they returned from victory. *Triumphāvit* here refers to such a triumph.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are not the fields adorned *with flowers*?¹ 2. The fields are adorned *with beautiful flowers*. 3. Have you not strengthened your memory *by use*? 4. I have strengthened my memory by daily use. 5. You will be praised for (because of) your diligence.² 6. Our pupils have been praised for their diligence. 7. The general saved the city by his valor. 8. Rome was saved by the valor of the Roman soldiers.

ABLATIVES WITH COMPARATIVES.

RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative:

Nihil est amabilius virtute,³ *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic.
Quid est melius bonitate,³ *What is better than goodness?* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM⁴ are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them:

Hibernia minor quam Britannia existimatur, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britannia.* Caes. Agris quam urbi⁵ terribilior, *More terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

¹ Ablative of Means. Rule XXI.

² Ablative of Cause.

³ *Virtute* and *bonitate* are both in the Ablative, by this Rule; the former after the comparative *amabilis*, and the latter after the comparative *melius*.

⁴ *Quam* is a conjunction, meaning *than*. Conjunctions are mere connectives, used to connect words or clauses.

⁵ *Agris* and *urbi*, the one *before* and the other *after* *quam*, are both in the same construction, in the Dative, depending upon *terribilior* according to Rule XIV. 391.

EXERCISE LXII.

I. Vocabulary.

Argentūm, i. n.	silver.
Avāritiā ae. f.	avarice.
Bōnitās, bōnitātis, f.	goodness, excellence.
Elōquens, elōquentis,	eloquent.
Ferrūm, i. n.	iron.
Foedūs, ū, ūm,	detestable.
Prētiōsūs, ū, ūm,	valuable.
Quām, conj.	than.
Scientiā, ae, f.	knowledge.
Turrīs, turris, f.	tower.

II. Translate into English.

1. Virtus mihi ¹ *gloriā* ² est carior. 2. Patria mihi *vitā* ² meā est carior. 3. Quid est jucundius *amicitiā* ? 4. Quid foedius est *avaritiā* ? 5. Aurum argenti pretiosius est. 6. Anīmus corpore est nobilior. 7. Turris altior erat quam murus.³ 8. Quid multitudīni ¹ *gratius* quam libertas est ? 9. Pater tuus est sapientior quam tu.⁴ 10. Quis eloquentior fuit quam Demosthēnes ?

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Silver is more valuable than *iron*.² 2. Virtue is more valuable than *gold*. 3. Wisdom is more valuable than *money*. 4. Will not wisdom be more useful to you than gold ? 5. Wisdom will be more useful to me than gold. 6. Goodness is more valuable than ⁵ *knowledge*. 7. Good-

¹ See Rule XIV. 391.

² Ablative, depending upon the comparative without *quam*, according to Rule XXIII.

³ In the same case as *turris*, the corresponding noun before *quam*. It is the subject of *erat* understood.

⁴ Subject of *es* understood.

⁵ In this and the following examples use *quam*, according to 417, 1.

ness is dearer to us than glory. 8. The Romans were braver than the Gauls. 9. The soldiers were braver than the general.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

420. This Ablative designates

I. The PLACE IN WHICH any thing is or is done :

II. The PLACE FROM WHICH any thing proceeds, including *Source* and *Separation*.

RULE XXVI—Ablative of Place.

421. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Locative : (45, 2).

I. Hannibal in Italiā¹ fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep. In nostris castris, *In our camps*. Caes. In Appiā viā, *On the Appian Way*. Cic. Ab urbe proficiscitur, *He departs from the city*. Caes. Ex Africā, *From Africa*. Liv.

II. Athēnis² fuit, *He was at Athens*. Cic. Bābŷlōne mortuus est, *He died at Babylon*. Cic. Fūgit Cōrintho, *He fled from Corinth*. Cic. Rōmae² fuit, *He was at Rome*. Cic.

EXERCISE LXIII.

I. Vocabulary.

A, āb, *prep. with abl.*

from, by.

Bābŷlōn, Bābŷlōnis, *f.*

Babylon, the city of.

¹ In Italiā, in castris, and in viā designate the PLACE IN WHICH; while ab urbe and ex Africā designate the PLACE FROM WHICH. They are in the Ablative with a preposition.

² Athēnis, Bābŷlōne, and Cōrintho, being names of towns, omit the preposition; while Rōmae, also the name of a town, is in the Locative, as it is in the Singular of the First declension. See 48, 4.

Cōrinthūs, i, <i>f.</i>	<i>Corinth</i> , city in Greece.
Diōnysius, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Dionysius</i> , tyrant of Syracuse.
Hābitō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to dwell</i> , <i>reside</i> .
Hortūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>garden</i> .
Laetitiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>joy</i> .
Lūcūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>grove</i> .
Rēgiō, rēgiōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>region</i> , <i>territory</i> .
Sēnātor, sēnātoris, <i>m.</i>	<i>senator</i> .
Trigintā,	<i>thirty</i> .

II. Translate into English.

1. Hannibal in *Hispaniā*¹ fuit. 2. Latinus in *Italiā* regnāvit. 3. Latinus in illis regionibus regnābat. 4. Cives ab urbe² fugiebant. 5. Themistōcles e Graeciā fugit. 6. Sex menses³ *Athēnis*⁴ fui. 7. Alexander *Babylōnē* erat. 8. Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsis fugit. 9. Themistōcles *Athēnis* fugit. 10. *Athēnis* habitābat. 11. Romūlus *Romae*⁵ regnāvit. 12. *Romae* ingens laetitia fuit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Is not your father in *Italy*? 2. My father is in *Greece*. 3. Were you not in *Greece*? 4. We resided in *Greece* three years. 5. Who is in the garden? 6. My brother is in the garden. 7. The pupils were walking in the fields. 8. The nightingales are singing in the groves. 9. Your father resided many years at *Athens*. 10. Did he not reside at *Carthage*? 11. He resided four years at *Carthage*. 12. Did you not receive my letter at *Rome*? 13. I received your letter at *Corinth*.

¹ Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, with the preposition *in*. See Rule XXXII.

² Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH, with the preposition *ab*.

³ See Rule VIII.

⁴ In the Ablative, without a preposition, because it is the name of a town.

⁵ In the Locative, because it is the name of a town, and is in the Singular of the First declension.

ABLATIVE OF TIME.

RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octogēsimo anno¹ est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year.* Cic. Vēre convēnere, *They assembled in the spring.* Liv. Nātali die suo, *On his birth-day.* Nep. Hieme et aestate, *In winter and summer.* Cic.

1. DESIGNATIONS OF TIME.—Any word so used as to involve the time of an action or event may be put in the ablative: *bello*, in the time of war; *pugnā*, in the time of battle; *lūdis*, at the time of the games; *mēmōriā*, in memory, i.e., in the time of one's recollection.

EXERCISE LXIV.

I. Vocabulary.

Brūtus, i, m.	Brutus, a Roman patriot.
Dēflāgrō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to burn, be consumed.
Diānā, ae, f.	Diana, a goddess.
Ephēsīūs, ā, ūm,	Ephesian, of Ephesus.
Hiems, hiēmīs, f.	winter.
Nātālis, ē,	belonging to one's birth, natal.
Nātālis diēs,	birth-day.
Pompēiūs, ii, m.	Pompey, Roman general.
Persae, ārūm, m. plur.	Persians.
Scribō, scribēre, scripsi, scriptūm,	to write.
Tempūs, tempōris, n.	time.

II. Translate into English.

1. Nātali die² tuo scripsisti epistōlam. 2. Eōdem die epistōlam tuam accēpi.³ 3. Pompēius urbem tertio mense

¹ Anno, vere, die, hieme, and aestate are all in the Ablative, by this Rule.

² Ablative of Time, according to Rule XXVIII.

³ From accipio

cepit. 4. Eodē die Persae superāti sunt. 5. Pompēius illo tempore miles fuit. 6. Illo anno Dianae Ephesiae templum deflagravit. 7. Occāsu solis hostes fugāti sunt. 8. Illo die Brutus patriam servavit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Were you not in Athens¹ at that time? 2. We were at Corinth² at that time. 3. Do you not reside in the city¹ in winter? 4. We reside in this beautiful city in the winter. 5. The city was taken at sunset. 6. Were you not in the city at that hour? 7. I was in the city at that time. 8. Were you not in Rome² on your birth-day? 9. I was in that city on my birth-day.

SECTION VIII.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions:

Ad *amicum*³ scripsi, *I have written to a friend.* Cic. In *cūriam*, *Into the senate-house.* Liv. In *Italiā*, *In Italy.* Nep. Pro *castris*, *Before the camp.*

433. The ACCUSATIVE is used with

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, apud, circa, circum, circiter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pēnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prōpe, propter, secundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus:

Ad *urbem*, *To the city.* Cic. Adversus *deos*, *Toward the gods.* Cic.

434. The ABLATIVE is used with

A or ab (abs),	absque,	cōram,	cum,	de,
e or ex,	prae,	pro,	sine,	tēnus :

¹ Ablative of Place. See Rule XXVI.

² Locative. See Rule XXVI. II.

³ The Accusative *amicum* is here used with the preposition *ad*; *curiam*, with *in*; the Ablative *Italiā*, with *in*. See 435, 1.

Ab urbe, *From the city.* Caes. Cōram conventu, *In the presence of the assembly.* Nep.

435. The ACCUSATIVE or ABLATIVE is used with

In, sub, subter, sūper:

In Asiam prōfūgit, *He fled into Asia.* Cic. Hannibal in Itāliā fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep.

1. In and Sub take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither*, the Ablative in answer to *where*: In Asiam, (*whither?*) *into Asia*; In Itāliā, (*where?*) *in Italy*.

EXERCISE LXV.

I. Vocabulary.

Adversūs, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>against.</i>
Dimicō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to fight.</i>
Pēr, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>of, through.</i>
Prospērē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>successfully.</i>
Prōvōcō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to challenge.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Lacedaemonii hostes ad *proelium* provocābant. 2. Scipio contra *Hannōnem*, ducem Carthaginensium, prospere pugnat. 3. Caesar adversus Pompēium dimicāvit. 4. Veritas per se¹ mihi grata est. 5. Virtus per se laudabilis est. 6. Persae a *Graecis*² superāti sunt. 7. Cicero de *amicitiā* scripsit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Will not the army be led back to *the city*? 2. It has been led back to *the city*. 3. Will you not write to me? 4. I will write to you. 5. Friendship is valuable of itself. 6. Have you not received five letters from *me*? 7. I have received four letters from *you*. 8. I have received two letters from your brother.

¹ Per se, literally *through itself*: render in *itself* or *of itself*.

² A *Graecis*, by the Greeks. See 414, 5.

SUGGESTIONS TO THE LEARNER.

I. THE preparation of a Reading Lesson in Latin involves,

1. A knowledge of the Meaning of the Latin.
2. A knowledge of the Structure of the Latin Sentences.
3. A translation into English.

MEANING OF THE LATIN.

II. Remember that almost every inflected word in a Latin sentence requires the use of both the Dictionary and the Grammar to ascertain its meaning.

The Dictionary gives the meaning of the word, without reference to its Grammatical properties of *case, number, mood, tense*, etc.; and the Grammar, the meaning of the endings which mark these properties. The Dictionary will give the meaning of *mensa*, a table, but not of *mensārum*, of tables: the Grammar alone will give the force of the ending *arum*.

III. Make yourself so familiar with all the endings of inflection, with their exact form and force, whether in declension or conjugation, that you will not only readily distinguish the different parts of speech from each other, but also the different forms of the same word, with their exact and distinctive force.

IV. In taking up a Latin sentence,

1. Notice carefully the endings of the several words, and thus determine which words are *nouns*, which *verbs*, etc.
2. Observe the force of each ending, and thus determine *case, number, voice, mood, tense*, etc.

This will be found to be a very important step toward the mastery of the sentence. By this means, you will discover not only the relation of the words to each other, but also an important part of their meaning, — that which they derive from their endings.

V. The key to the meaning of any simple sentence (345, I.) will be found in the simple subject and predicate; i.e., in the Nominative and its Verb. Hence, in looking out the sentence, observe the following order. Take

1. The Subject, or Nominative.

The ending will, in most instances, enable you to distinguish this from all other words, except the adjectives which agree with it. These may be looked out at the same time with the subject.

Sometimes the subject is not expressed, but only implied, in the ending of the verb. It may then be readily supplied, as it is always a pronoun of such person and number as the verb indicates: as, *audio*, I hear, the ending *o* showing that the subject is *ego*; *auditis*, you hear, the ending *itis* showing that the subject is *vos*.

2. The Verb, with Predicate Noun or Adjective, if any.

This will be readily known by the ending. Now, combining this with the Subject, you will have an outline of the sentence. All the other words must now be associated with these two parts.

3. The Modifiers of the Subject; i.e., adjectives agreeing with it, nominatives in apposition with it, genitives dependent upon it, etc.

But perhaps some of these have already been looked out in the attempt to ascertain the subject.

In looking out these words, bear in mind the meaning of the subject to which they belong. This will greatly aid you in selecting from the dictionary the true meaning in the passage before you.

4. The Modifiers of the Verb, i.e. (1) Oblique cases, accusatives, datives, etc., dependent upon it, and (2) Adverbs qualifying it.

Bear in mind all the while the force of the case and the meaning of the verb, that you may be able to select for each word the true meaning in the passage before you.

VI. In complex and compound sentences (345, II., III.), discover first the connectives which unite the several members, and then proceed with each member as with a simple sentence.

VII. In the use of Dictionary and Vocabulary, remember that you are not to look for the particular form which occurs in the sentence, but for the Nom. Sing. of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and for the First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of verbs. Therefore,

1. In Pronouns, make yourself so familiar with their declension, that any oblique case will at once suggest the Nom. Sing.

If *vobis* occurs, you must remember that the Nom. Sing. is *tu*.

2. In Nouns and Adjectives, make yourself so familiar with the case-endings, that you will be able to drop that of the given case, and substitute for it that of the Nom. Sing.

Thus *mensibus*; stem *mensi*, Nom. Sing. *mensis*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *urbem*, *urb*, *urbs*.

3. In Verbs, change the ending of the given form into that of the First Pers. Sing. of the Pres. Indic. Act.

Thus *amābat*; stem *ama*, First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. *amo*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *amavērunt*; First Pers. Perf. *amāvi*, Perf. stem *amav*, Verb stem *ama*; *amo*.

To illustrate the steps recommended in the preceding suggestions, we add the following

Model.

VIII. Themistōcles imperātor servitūte totam Graeciam liberāvit.

1. Without knowing the meaning of the words, you will discover from their *forms*,

1) That *Themistōcles* and *imperātor* are probably nouns in the Nom. Sing.

2) That *servitūte* is a noun in the Abl. Sing.

3) That *totam* and *Graeciam* are either nouns or adjectives in the Accus. Sing.

4) That *liberāvit* is a verb in the Act. voice, Indic. mood, Perf. tense, Third Person, Singular number.

2. Now, turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, you will learn,

1) That *Themistocles* is the name of an eminent Athenian general: **THEMISTOCLES**.

2) That *libero*, for which you must look, not for *liberavit*, means to liberate: **LIBERATED**.

Themistocles liberated.

3) That *imperator* means *commander*: **THE COMMANDER**.

Themistocles the commander liberated.

4) That *Graeciam* is the name of a country: **GREECE**.

Themistocles the commander liberated Greece.

5) That *totus* means *the whole, all*: **ALL**.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece.

6) That *servitus* means *servitude*: **FROM SERVITUDE**.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece from servitude.

STRUCTURE OF THE LATIN SENTENCE.

IX. The structure of a sentence is best shown by *analyzing*¹ it, and by *parsing* the words which compose it.

Parsing.

XVII.² In parsing a word,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Inflect³ it, if capable of inflection.
3. Give its gender, number, case, voice, mood, tense, person, etc.⁴
4. Give its Syntax, and the Rule for it.⁵

TRANSLATION.

XIX. In translating, render as literally as possible without doing violence to the English.

¹ It has not been thought advisable to enter upon the subject of *analysis* at this early stage of the course. That will be presented in the Reader, which follows this work.

² These suggestions are taken, without change, from the Reader. Accordingly, the numerals are made to correspond to those in that work.

³ Inflect; i.e., decline, compare, or conjugate.

⁴ That is, such of these properties as it possesses.

⁵ For Models for Parsing, see pp. 16, 22, 27, 34, 55, 57, 59, 66, 71, and 73.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

For Explanation of Abbreviations and References, see p. ix.

A.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>A, ab, <i>prep. with abl. From, by.</i></p> <p>Accipio, accipere, accipi, acceptum. <i>To receive.</i></p> <p>Acē, acris, acere. <i>Sharp, severe, valiant.</i></p> <p>Acies, aciei, <i>f. Order of battle, battle-array, army.</i></p> <p>Ad, <i>prep. with acc. To, towards, near.</i></p> <p>Administrō, are, avi, atum. <i>To administer, manage.</i></p> <p>Admonē, admonere, admonui, admonitum. <i>To admonish.</i></p> <p>Adventus, us, m. <i>Arrival, approach.</i></p> <p>Adversus, <i>prep. with acc. Against.</i></p> <p>Aedificō, are, avi, atum. <i>To build.</i></p> <p>Aestas, aestatis, <i>f. Summer.</i></p> <p>Agēr, agri, m. <i>Field, land.</i></p> <p>Aggēr, aggeris, m. <i>Mound, rampart.</i></p> <p>Agis, Agidis, m. <i>Agis, a king of Sparta.</i></p> <p>Albanus, s, um. <i>Alban.</i></p> <p>Alexander, Alexandri, m. <i>Alexander, the Great.</i></p> <p>Aliquis, aliqua, aliquis or aliquod. <i>Some, some one.</i></p> <p>Altus, s, um. <i>High, lofty.</i></p> <p>Amans, amantis. <i>Loving, fond of.</i></p> | <p>Ambulō, are, avi, atum. <i>To walk.</i></p> <p>Amicitia, ae, <i>f. Friendship.</i></p> <p>Amicus, s, um. <i>Friendly.</i></p> <p>Amicus, i, m. <i>Friend.</i></p> <p>Amnis, amnis, m. <i>River.</i></p> <p>Amō, are, avi, atum. <i>To love.</i></p> <p>Amor, amoris, m. <i>Love.</i></p> <p>Ampliō, are, avi, atum. <i>To enlarge.</i></p> <p>Ancus, i, m. <i>Ancus, a Roman king.</i></p> <p>Animāl, animalis, n. <i>Animal.</i></p> <p>Animūs, i, m. <i>Soul, mind, passion, disposition.</i></p> <p>Annulus, i, m. <i>Ring.</i></p> <p>Annus, i, m. <i>Year.</i></p> <p>Antē, <i>prep. with acc. Before.</i></p> <p>Antiquus, s, um. <i>Ancient.</i></p> <p>Apis, apis, <i>f. Bee.</i></p> <p>Appellō, are, avi, atum. <i>To call.</i></p> <p>Appetens, appetentis. <i>Desiring, striving for.</i></p> <p>Apud, <i>prep. with acc. In the presence of, near, before, among.</i></p> <p>Apulia, ae, <i>f. Apulia, a country in Italy.</i></p> <p>Arabs, Arabis, m and f. <i>Arab, an Arab.</i></p> <p>Arctē, <i>adv. Closely, soundly.</i></p> <p>Argentum, i, n. <i>Silver.</i></p> <p>Arō, arare, aravi, aratum. <i>To plough.</i></p> |
|--|---|

Arrōgantiā, ae, *f.* *Arrogance.*
 Ars, artis, *f.* *Art, skill.*
 Artāxerxēs, is, *m.* *Artaxerxes, a Persian king.*
 Arx, arcis, *f.* *Citadel, fortress.*
 Athēnae, ārum, *f. plur.* *Athens, the capital of Attica.*
 Athēniēnsis, ē. *Athenian.*
 Athēniēnsis, is, *m. and f.* *Athenian, an Athenian.*
 Atticūs, ī, *m.* *Atticus, a Roman name.*
 Audiō, irē, ivi, itum. *To hear.*
 Auditōr, auditōris, *m.* *Hearer, auditor.*
 Aureūs, ū, ūm. *Golden.*
 Aurum, ī, *n.* *Gold.*
 Avāritiā, ae, *f.* *Avarice.*
 Avīdus, ū, ūm. *Desirous of, eager for.*
 Avis, avis, *f.* *Bird.*

B.

Bābylōn, Bābylōnis, *f.* *Babylon, the celebrated capital of the Assyrian Empire, on the banks of the Euphrates.*
 Bēātus, ū, ūm. *Happy, blessed.*
 Bellum, ī, *n.* *War, warfare.*
 Bēnē, *adv.* *Well.*
 Bēnignē, *adv.* *Kindly.*
 Bōnitās, bōnitātis, *f.* *Goodness, excellence.*
 Bōnus, ū, ūm. *Good.*
 Brēvis, ē. *Short, brief.*
 Brūtus, ī, *m.* *Brutus, a celebrated Roman patriot.*

C.

Caesār, Caesāris, *m.* *Cæsar, a celebrated Roman commander.*
 Cāius, ii, *m.* *Caius, a proper name.*

Cāmillus, ī, *m.* *Camillus, a Roman general.*
 Campūs, ī, *m.* *Plain.*
 Cānis, cānis, *m. and f.* *Dog.*
 Cantō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To sing.*
 Cantūs, ūs, *m.* *Singing, song.*
 Cāpiō, cāpēre, cēpi, captum. *To take, capture.*
 Cāpūt, cāpitis, *n.* *Head, capital.*
 Carmēn, carminis, *n.* *Song, poem, verse.*
 Carthāgīniēnsis, ē. *Carthaginian.*
 Carthāgīniēnsis, is, *m. and f.* *A Carthaginian.*
 Carthāgō, Carthāgīnis, *f.* *Carthage, a city of Northern Africa.*
 Carthāgō Nōvā. *New Carthage, Carthagena, a city of Spain.*
 Cārūs, ū, ūm. *Dear.*
 Cātō, Cātōnis, *m.* *Cato, a distinguished Roman.*
 Centum. *One hundred. See 176.*
 Certāmen, certāminis, *n.* *Contest, strife, battle.*
 Cibus, ī, *m.* *Food.*
 Cicerō, Cicerōnis, *m.* *Cicero, the celebrated Roman orator.*
 Cīvīlis, ē. *Civil.*
 Cīvis, civis, *m. and f.* *Citizen.*
 Cīvitas, civitātis, *f.* *State, city.*
 Clārus, ū, ūm. *Renowned, distinguished, illustrious.*
 Classis, classis, *f.* *Fleet, navy.*
 Coercēō, coercēre, coercui, coercitum. *To check.*
 Cōlō, cōlēre, cōlui, cultum. *To practise, cultivate.*
 Commūnis, ē. *Common.*
 Condemnō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To condemn.*
 Conditōr, condītōris, *m.* *Founder.*
 Conjux, conjūgis, *m. and f.* *Wife, husband, spouse.*

Cōnōn, Cōnōnīs, m. *Conon*, an Athenian general.
 Conscientiā, ae, f. *Consciousness*.
 Consiiliū, ii, n. *Design, plan*.
 Conspectus, ūs, m. *Sight, view, presence*.
 Consul, consulis, m. *Consul*.
 Contrā, prep. with acc. *Against, opposite to, contrary to*.
 Convocō, arē, āvi, ātūm. *To assemble, call together*.
 Cōrinthiūs, i, f. *Corinth*, city in Greece.
 Cornēliūs, ii, m. *Cornelius*, a Roman name.
 Cūrōnā, ae, f. *Crown*.
 Corpūs, corpōris, n. *Body, person*.
 Creō, arē, āvi, ātūm. *To create, make, appoint, elect*.
 Crūdēlis, ē. *Cruel*.
 Crūdūs, ā, ūm. *Unripe*.
 Culpō, arē, āvi, ātūm. *To blame*.
 Cūm, prep. with abl. *With*.
 Cūpidūs, ā, ūm. *Desirous of*.
 Cūrēs, Cūritūm, m. plur. *Cures*, a Sabine town.
 Custōdiō, irē, ivi, itūm. *To guard*.
 Custōs, custōdis, m. and f. *Keeper, guard*.

D.

Dē, prep. with abl. *Concerning*.
 Dēbeō, dēberē, dēbuī, dēbītūm. *To owe*.
 Dēcēm. *Ten*. See 176.
 Dēcimūs, ā, ūm. *Tenth*.
 Dēfectiō, dēfectiōnis, f. *Eclipse*.
 Dēflāgrō, arē, āvi, ātūm. *To burn, be consumed*.
 Dēlectō, arē, āvi, ātūm. *To delight, please*.
 Dēmārātūs, i, m. *Demaratus*, a Corinthian.

Dēmōsthēnēs, is, m. *Demosthenes*, the celebrated Athenian orator.
 Diānā, ae, f. *Diana*, the goddess of the chase.
 Dicō, dicērē, dixi, dictūm. *To say, speak, tell*.
 Diēs, diēi, m. *Day*. See 120, note.
 Diligens, diligentis. *Diligent*.
 Diligentia, ae, f. *Diligence*.
 Dimicō, arē, āvi, ātūm. *To fight*.
 Diōnysiūs, ii, m. *Dionysius*, tyrant of Syracuse.
 Discipulūs, i, m. *Pupil*.
 Disertē, adv. *Clearly, eloquently*.
 Displīcō, displīcērē, displīcuī, displīctūm. *To displease*.
 Divinūs, ā, ūm. *Divine*.
 Dōlōr, dōlōris, m. *Pain, grief, suffering*.
 Dōnō, arē, āvi, ātūm. *To give, present*.
 Dōnūm, i, n. *Gift*.
 Dormiō, irē, ivi, itūm. *To sleep*.
 Dracō, Dracōnis, m. *Draco*, an Athenian lawgiver.
 Dūcenti, ae, ā. *Two hundred*.
 Dūcō, dūcērē, duxi, ductūm. *To lead*.
 Dulcis, ē. *Sweet, pleasant*.
 Duō, ae, ō. *Two*. See 175.
 Dūplicō, arē, āvi, ātūm. *To double, increase*.
 Dux, dūcis, m. and f. *Leader, general*.

E.

E, ex, prep. with abl. *From*.
 Ebriētās, ebriētātis, f. *Drunkenness*.
 Educō, educērē, eduxi, eductūm. *To lead forth, lead out*.
 Effugiō, effugērē, effugi, effugitūm. *To escape*.
 Egō, mei. *I*. See 184.

Egrēgius, ā, ūm. *Distinguished.*
 Egrēgiē, adv. *Excellently.*
 Elēphantūs, ī, m. *Elephant.*
 Elōquens, elōquentis. *Eloquent.*
 Elōquentiā, ae, f. *Eloquence.*
 Ephēsius, ā, ūm. *Ephesian, of Ephesus.*
 Epīrūs, ī, f. *Epirus, a country in Greece.*
 Epistōla, ae, f. *Letter.*
 Erūdiō, irē, ivi, itūm. *To instruct, refine, educate.*
 Eruditūs, ā, ūm. *Learned, instructed in.*
 Ex, prep. with abl. *From.*
 Exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitūm. *To exercise, train.*
 Exercitūs, ūs, m. *Army.*
 Expugnō, arē, avi, atūm. *To take, take by storm.*
 Exspectō, arē, avi, atūm. *To await, expect.*
 Exsul, exsultis, m. and f. *Exile.*

F.

Faciēs, faciēi, f. *Face, appearance.*
 Ferrūm, ī, n. *Iron.*
 Fertīlis, ē. *Fertile.*
 Fidēlitās, fidēlitātis, f. *Fidelity, faithfulness.*
 Fidēs, fidei, f. *Faith, fidelity.*
 Fidūs, ā, ūm. *Faithful.*
 Filiā, ae, f. *Daughter.*
 Filiūs, ī, m. *Son.*
 Finiō, irē, ivi, itūm. *To finish, bring to a close.*
 Finis, finis, m. *Limit, territory.*
 Firmō, arē, avi, atūm. *To strengthen, confirm.*
 Flāminius, īi, m. *Flaminius, a Roman general.*
 Flōs, flōris, m. *Flower.*
 Foedūs, ā, ūm. *Detestable.*

Fons, fontis, m. *Fountain.*
 Fortis, ē. *Brave.*
 Fortitēr, adv. *Bravely.*
 Fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f. *Bravery, fortitude.*
 Fossā, ae, f. *Ditch, moat.*
 Frāter, frātris, m. *Brother.*
 Fructūs, ūs, m. *Fruit, produce, income.*
 Frumentūm, ī, n. *Corn, grain.*
 Fūgā, ae, f. *Flight.*
 Fūgiō, fūgērē, fūgi, fūgitūm. *To flee, fly, run away.*
 Fūgō, arē, avi, atūm. *To rout, drive away.*
 Fūnestūs, ā, ūm. *Destructive.*
 Fūrōr, fūrōris, m. *Madness, insanity.*

G.

Gallūs, ī, m. *Gallus, a proper name.*
 Gallūs, ī, m. *Gaul, a Gaul, an inhabitant of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.*
 Gemmā, ae, f. *Gem.*
 Gēnēr, gēneri, m. *Son-in-law.*
 Gens, gentis, f. *Race.*
 Germāniā, ae, f. *Germany.*
 Glādiūs, īi, m. *Sword.*
 Glōbōsus, ā, ūm. *Spherical.*
 Glōriā, ae, f. *Glory.*
 Graeciā, ae, f. *Greece.*
 Graecūs, ā, ūm. *Grecian, Greek.*
 Graecūs, ī, m. *Greek, a Greek.*
 Grātiā, ae, f. *Favor, gratitude, thanks.*
 Grātūs, ā, ūm. *Acceptable, pleasing.*
 Grex, grēgis, m. *Herd, flock.*

H.

Hābeō, hābērē, hābui, hābitūm. *To have, hold.*
 Hābitō, arē, avi, atūm. *To dwell, reside.*

Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, *m.* *Hannibal*, a celebrated Carthaginian general.
 Hannō, Hannōnīs, *m.* *Hunno*, a Carthaginian general.
 Hastā, *ae, f.* *Spear*.
 Hic, haec, hōc. *This*.
 Hiems, hiēmīs, *f.* *Winter*.
 Hirundō, hirundīnīs, *f.* *Swallow*.
 Hispaniā, *ae, f.* *Spain*.
 Hispaniūs, *i, m.* *A Spaniard*.
 Hōmēris, *i, m.* *Homer*, the celebrated Grecian poet.
 Hōmō, hōmīnīs, *m.* *Man*.
 Hōnōr, hōnōris, *m.* *Honor*.
 Hōrā, *ae, f.* *Hour*.
 Hostis, hostīs, *m. and f.* *Enemy*.

I.

Idēm, eādēm, idēm. *Same, the same*. See 186.
 Ignōrō, ārē, āvī, ātīm. *To be ignorant of, not to know*.
 Illē, illā, illūd. *That, he, she, it*. See 186.
 Illustrō, ārē, āvī, ātīm. *To illustrate, illumine*.
 Imāgō, imāgīnīs, *f.* *Image, picture*.
 Impātiens, impātientīs. *Impatient*.
 Impērātōr, impērātōris, *m.* *Commander*.
 Impēritūm, *ii, n.* *Reign, power, government*.
 Impētūs, ūs, *m.* *Attack*.
 Imprōbitās, imprōbitātīs, *f.* *Wickedness*.
 In, *prep. with acc. and abl.* *Into, in, within*.
 Incertūs, ā, ūm. *Uncertain*.
 Indicō, indicērē, indixī, indictūm. *To declare*.
 Infestō, ārē, āvī, ātīm. *To infest*.
 Ingens, ingentīs. *Huge, large, great*.

Innocens, innocentīs. *Innocent*.
 Insāniā, *ae, f.* *Insanity*.
 Insulā, *ae, f.* *Island*.
 Intēr, *prep. with acc.* *Between, -among, in the midst of*.
 Intrō, ārē, āvī, ātīm. *To enter*.
 Inventōr, inventōris, *m.* *Inventor*.
 Invitō, ārē, āvī, ātīm. *To invite*.
 Ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm. *Self, he, himself*. See 186.
 Is, eā, id. *That, he, she, it*.
 Istē, istā, istūd. *That, such*. See 186.
 Italiā, *ae, f.* *Italy*.

J.

Jaciō, jacērē, jēcī, jactūm. *To cast, throw, hurl*.
 Jām, *adv.* *Now, already*.
 Jucundūs, ā, ūm. *Delightful, pleasant*.
 Jūdex, jūdīcis, *m. and f.* *Judge*.
 Jungō, jungērē, junxī, junctūm. *To join*.
 Justitiā, *ae, f.* *Justice*.
 Justūs, ā, ūm. *Upright, just*.
 Jūvenīs, jūvenīs, *m. and f.* *A youth, young man*.
 Jūventūs, jūventūtīs, *f.* *Youth, a youth, a young person*.

L.

Lābōr, lābōris, *m.* *Labor*.
 Lābōrō, ārē, āvī, ātīm. *To strive for, labor, work*.
 Lācēdaemōniūs, *ii, m.* *Spartan, a Spartan, inhabitant of Sparta in Greece*.
 Laetitiā, *ae, f.* *Joy*.
 Lāpis, lāpīdis, *m.* *Stone*.
 Lātinē, *adv.* *In Latin*.
 Lātinūs, *i, m.* *Latinus, a Latin king*.
 Lātūs, ā, ūm. *Broad*.

Laudābīlis, ē. *Praiseworthy, laudable.*

Laudō, ārē, āvī, ātīm. *To praise.*

Laus, laudis, *f. Praise.*

Lāvinia, ac, *f. Lavinia, a proper name.*

Lēgātīō, lēgātīōnis, *f. Embassy.*

Lēgātūs, ī, *m. Ambassador.*

Lēgiō, lēgiōnis, *f. Legion, a body of soldiers.*

Lēgō, lēgērē, lēgi, lectūm. *To choose, appoint.*

Leō, leōnis, *m. Lion.*

Lētālis, ē. *Mortal, deadly.*

Lex, lēgis, *f. Law.*

Libēr, librī, *m. Book.*

Libērō, ārē, āvī, ātīm. *To liberate.*

Libertās, libertātis, *f. Liberty.*

Longūs, ā, ūm. *Long.*

Lūctūs, ī, *m. Grove.*

Lūnā, ac, *f. Moon.*

Luscīniā, ac, *f. Nightingale.*

Lux, lucis, *f. Light.*

Luxuriā, ac, *f. Luxury.*

Lycurgūs, ī, *m. Lycurgus, a Spartan lawgiver.*

Lysandēr, Lysandri, *m. Lysander, a Spartan general.*

M.

Mācēdōniā, ac, *f. Macedonia, Macedon, a country of Northern Greece.*

Māgistēr, māgistrī, *m. Master, teacher.*

Magnōpērē, *adv. Greatly.*

Magnūs, ā, ūm. *Great, large.*

Māltūm, ī, *n. Evil.*

Marcellūs, ī, *m. Marcellus, a celebrated Roman general.*

Mārē, mārīs, *n. Sea.*

Mātēr, mātēris, *f. Mother.*

Mātūrūs, ā, ūm. *Ripe.*

Mēmōriā, ac, *f. Memory.*

Mensā, ac, *f. Table.*

Mensis, mensis, *m. Month.*

Mercēs, mercēdis, *f. Reward.*

Mērēō, mērērē, mēruī, mērītūm. *To deserve, merit.*

Mētīs, ā, ūm. *My. See 185.*

Milēs, militis, *m. Soldier.*

Miltiādēs, is, *m. Miltiades, an Athenian general.*

Mōdestiā, ac, *f. Modesty.*

Mōnēō, mōnērē, mōnuī, mōnītūm. *To advise.*

Mons, montis, *m. Mountain.*

Monstrō, ārē, āvī, ātīm. *To show, point out.*

Mūrā, ac, *f. Delay.*

Mors, mortis, *f. Death.*

Multitūdō, multitudinis, *f. Multitude.*

Multūs, ā, ūm. *Much, many.*

Mundūs, ī, *m. World, universe.*

Mūniō, irē, īvī, itūm. *To fortify, defend.*

Mūnūs, mūnēris, *n. Gift, present.*

Mūrūs, ī, *m. Wall.*

Mūtātīō, mūtātīōnis, *f. Change, phase.*

N.

Nātālis, ē. *Belonging to one's birth, natal.*

Nātālis diēs. *Birth-day.*

Nātūrā, ac, *f. Nature.*

Nāvālis, ē. *Naval.*

Nāvīgō, ārē, āvī, ātīm. *To sail to.*

Nāvis, nāvis, *f. Ship.*

Nēcessāriūs, ā, ūm. *Necessary.*

Nēcessitās, nēcessitātis, *f. Necessity.*

Nēpōs, nēpōtis, *m. Grandson.*

Nōbīlis, ē. *Noble.*

Nōmēn, nōmīnis, *n. Name.*

Nōmīnō, ārē, āvī, ātīm. *To call, name.*

Nōn, adv. Not.

Nonnē, interrog. part. Expects the answer, Yes. See 346, II., 2.

Nostrē, nostrā, nostrūm. Our, our own, ours.

Nōvītās, nōvītātis, f. Novelty.

Nōvūs, ā, ūm. New.

Nox, noctis, f. Night.

Nūbēs, nūbīs, f. Cloud.

Nūm, interrog. part. Expects the answer, No. See 346, II., 1.

Nūmā, ae, m. Numa, a Roman king.

Nūmērūs, ī, m. Number, quantity.

Nummūs, ī, m. Money, a piece of money, a coin.

Nuntiō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. To proclaim, announce.

O.

Obsēs, obsidis, m. and f. Hostage.

Occāsūs, ūs, m. Setting, going down.

Occupō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. To occupy, take possession of.

Octāvūs, ā, ūm. Eighth.

Octō. Eight. See 176.

Octōgintā. Eighty. See 176.

Oculūs, ī, m. Eye.

Odiōsus, ā, ūm. Odious, hateful.

Omnīs, ē. All, every, whole.

Oppidūm, ī, n. Town, city.

Oppugnō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. To besiege, take by storm.

Optō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. To wish for, desire.

Opulentūs, ā, ūm. Rich, opulent.

Opūs, ōpēris, n. Work.

Orātiō, orātiōnis, f. Oration, speech.

Orātōr, orātōris, m. Orator.

Orbīs, orbis, m. Circle.

Orbis terrārūm. The world.

Ornō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. To adorn, be an ornament to.

Ovis, ōvis, f. Sheep.

P.

Pārens, pārentis, m. and f. Parent.

Pārēd, pārērē, pārui, pārītūm. To obey.

Pars, partis, f. Part, portion.

Parvūs, ā, ūm. Small.

Passēr, passēris, m. Sparrow.

Pastōr, pastōris, m. Shepherd.

Pātēr, pātris, m. Father.

Pātriā, ae, f. Native country, country.

Paulūs, ī, m. Paulus, a Roman consul.

Pax, pācis, f. Peace.

Pēcūniā, ae, f. Money.

Pellis, pellis, f. Skin, hide.

Pēr, prep. with acc. Of, through.

Pērāgrō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. To wander through.

Pērītūs, ā, ūm. Skilled in.

Persā, ae, m. A Persian.

Pēs, pēdis, m. Foot.

Philippūs, ī, m. Philip, king of Macedon.

Philōsophiā, ae, f. Philosophy.

Philōsophūs, ī, m. Philosopher.

Piētās, piētātis, f. Filial affection, piety, duty.

Pirātā, ae, m. Pirate.

Piscis, piscis, m. Fish.

Pisistrātūs, ī, m. Pisistratus, tyrant of Athens.

Plācēd, plācērē, plācui, plācītūm. To please.

Plēnūs, ā, ūm. Full.

Poenūs, ā, ūm. Carthaginian.

Poenus, ī, m. A Carthaginian.

Pōmūm, ī, n. Fruit.

Pompiliūs, ii, m. Pompilius, a Roman name.

Pompēiūs, ii, m. Pompey, a celebrated Roman general.

Pondūs, pondēris, n. Weight, mass.

Portūs, ūs, m. *Port, harbor.*
 Post, *prep. with acc. After.*
 Pōtens, pōtētis. *Powerful, able.*
 Praebē, praebēre, praebui, praebitum. *To show, furnish, give.*
 Praeceptōr, praeceptōris, m. *Teacher, instructor.*
 Praeceptum, i, n. *Rule, precept.*
 Praeclārus, ū, ūm. *Renowned, distinguished.*
 Praedicō, praedicere, praedixi, praedictum. *To predict, foretell.*
 Praemium, ii, n. *Reward.*
 Prātum, i, n. *Meadow.*
 Prētiōsus, ū, ūm. *Valuable.*
 Primus, ū, ūm. *First.*
 Principium, ii, n. *Beginning.*
 Prō, *prep. with abl. In behalf of, for.*
 Proelium, ii, n. *Battle.*
 Prospere, *adv. Successfully.*
 Prōvō, ūre, ūvi, ātum. *To challenge.*
 Prudentia, ae, f. *Prudence.*
 Publius, ii, m. *Publius, a Roman name.*
 Puella, ae, f. *Girl.*
 Puēr, puēri, m. *Boy.*
 Pugnā, ae, f. *Battle.*
 Pugnō, ūre, ūvi, ātum. *To fight.*
 Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm. *Beautiful.*
 Pūnicus, ū, ūm. *Carthaginian, Punic.*
 Pyrrhus, i, m. *Pyrrhus, a king of Epirus.*

Q.

Quā, *conj. Than.*
 Quartus, ū, ūm. *Fourth.*
 Quattuor. *Four. See 176.*
 Qui, quae, quod, *rel. pronoun. Who, which, what. See 187.*

Quinquaginta. *Fifty. See 176.*
 Quinquē. *Five. See 176.*
 Quintus, ū, ūm. *Fifth.*
 Quis, quae, quid? *interrog. pronoun. Who, which, what? See 188.*
 Quivis, quaevis, quodvis, or quidvis, *indef. pronoun. Whoever, whatever. See 190.*
 Quotidianus, ū, ūm. *Daily.*
 Quotidiē, *adv. Daily.*

R.

Rāmūs, i, m. *Branch.*
 Ratiō, ratiōnis, f. *Reason.*
 Rectē, *adv. Rightly.*
 Rectum, i, n. *Right, rectitude.*
 Rēducō, rēducere, reduxi, reductum. *To lead back.*
 Rēginā, ae, f. *Queen.*
 Rēgiō, rēgiōnis, f. *Region, territory.*
 Rēgulus, i, m. *Regulus, a Roman general.*
 Regnō, ūre, ūvi, ātum. *To reign.*
 Regnum, i, n. *Kingdom, royal authority.*
 Rēgō, rēgere, rexī, rectum. *To rule.*
 Rēnovō, ūre, ūvi, ātum. *To renew.*
 Rēs, rei, f. *Thing, affair.*
 Rēs publicā. *Republic.*
 Rēvocō, ūre, ūvi, ātum. *To recall.*
 Rex, rēgis, m. *King.*
 Rhēnus, i, m. *Rhine.*
 Rōmā, ae, f. *Rome.*
 Rōmānus, ū, ūm. *Roman.*
 Rōmānus, i, m. *Roman, a Roman.*
 Rōmulus, i, m. *Romulus, the founder of Rome.*

S.

Sāguntum, i, n. *Saguntum, a town in Spain.*

Sālūs, sālūtīs, *f.* *Safety.*
 Sālūtāris, ē. *Beneficial, salutary, advantageous.*
 Sālūtō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To salute.*
 Sanctūs, ā, tūm. *Holy, sacred.*
 Sāpiens, sāpientīs. *Wise.*
 Sāpientēr, *adv.* *Wisely.*
 Sāpientiā, ae, *f.* *Wisdom.*
 Schōlā, ae, *f.* *School.*
 Scientiā, ae, *f.* *Knowledge.*
 Scipiō, Scipiōnis, *m.* *Scipio, a distinguished Roman.*
 Scribō, scribērē, scripsī, scriptūm. *To write.*
 Scythae, ārum, *m. plur.* *The Scythians.*
 Sēcundūs, ā, tūm. *Second, favorable.*
 Sempēr, *adv.* *Always, ever.*
 Sēnātor, sēnātorīs, *m.* *Senator.*
 Sēnātūs, ūs, *m.* *Senate.*
 Sēnectūs, sēnectūtīs, *f.* *Old age.*
 Sensūs, ūs, *m.* *Feeling, perception, sense.*
 Sententiā, ae, *f.* *Opinion.*
 Sermō, sermōnis, *m.* *Discourse, conversation.*
 Serviō, irē, ivī, itūm. *To serve.*
 Serviūs, ii, *m.* *Servius, a Roman proper name.*
 Serjō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To preserve, keep, save.*
 Servūs, i, *m.* *Slave.*
 Sex. *Six.* See 176.
 Siciliā, ae, *f.* *Sicily.*
 Silentium, ii, *n.* *Silence.*
 Similis, ē. *Like.*
 Singulāris, ē. *Remarkable, singular.*
 Sōcēr, sōcērī, *m.* *Father-in-law.*
 Sōciūs, ii, *m.* *Ally, associate.*
 Sōcrātēs, is, *m.* *Socrates, the celebrated Athenian philosopher.*
 Sōl, sōlis, *m.* *Sun.*

Sōlōn, Sōlōnis, *m.* *Solon, an Athenian legislator.*
 Sōlūm, i, *n.* *Soil.*
 Spartā, ae, *f.* *Sparta, capital of Laconia.*
 Spēcies, spēcīei, *f.* *Appearance.*
 Spērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To hope.*
 Spēs, spēi, *f.* *Hope.*
 Spōliō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To rob, spoil, despoil.*
 Stimulō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To stimulate.*
 Stultitiā, ae, *f.* *Folly.*
 Suī, sibi. *Himself, herself, itself.* See 184.
 Sūm, essē, fuī. *To be.* See 204.
 Sūpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To conquer.*
 Supplicium, ii, *n.* *Punishment.*
 Sūtis, ā, tūm. *His, her, its, their, his own, her own, its own, their own.*
 Syrācūsae, ārum, *f. plur.* *Syracuse, a city of Sicily.*

T.

Tācēō, tācērē, tācui, tācītūm. *To be silent.*
 Tārentūm, i, *n.* *Tarentum, an Italian town.*
 Tarquiniūs, ii, *m.* *Tarquin, a Roman king.*
 Tēlūm, i, *n.* *Javelin, weapon.*
 Tēmēritās, tēmēritātis, *f.* *Rashness.*
 Templūm, i, *n.* *Temple.*
 Tempūs, tempōris, *n.* *Time.*
 Terrā, ae, *f.* *Land, earth.*
 Terro, terrērē, terrui, terrītūm. *To frighten, terrify.*
 Tertius, ā, tūm. *Third.*
 Thālēs, is, *m.* *Thales, a Grecian philosopher.*
 Thēbānūs, ā, tūm. *Theban, belonging to Thebes (a city in Greece).*

Thēbānūs, i, m. *A Theban.*
 Thēmistōclēs, is, m. *Themistocles, a celebrated Athenian.*
 Thrāsýbulūs, i, m. *Thrasybulus, the liberator of Athens.*
 Ticinūs, i, m. *Ticinus, a river of Cisalpine Gaul.*
 Trēs, triā. *Three. See 175.*
 Trīgintā. *Thirty. See 176.*
 Triumphō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To triumph.*
 Trōjā, ae, f. *Troy, ancient city in Asia Minor.*
 Tū, tuī. *Thou, you. See 184.*
 Tullīa, ae, f. *Tullia, a Roman proper name.*
 Tullūs, i, m. *Tullus, a Roman king.*
 Tūm, adv. *Then, at that time.*
 Turrīs, turrīs, f. *Tower.*
 Tuūs, ā, ūm. *Your, yours, thy, thine.*
 Týrannūs, i, m. *Tyrant.*
 Týriūs, ā, ūm. *Tyrian.*

U.

Ulyssēs, is, m. *Ulysses, a Grecian king.*
 Unīversūs, ā, ūm. *All, the whole, entire.*
 Unūs, ā, ūm. *One. See 175.*
 Urbs, urbīs, f. *City.*
 Usūs, ūs, m. *Use.*
 Utīlis, ē. *Useful.*

V.

Vālētūdō, vālētūdīnīs, f. *Health.*
 Vāriētās, vāriētātīs, f. *Variety.*
 Vāriūs, ā, ūm. *Various.*
 Varrō, varrōnīs, m. *Varro, a Roman consul.*
 Vēr, vēris, n. *Spring.*
 Verbūm, i, n. *Word.*

Vērecundiā, ae, f. *Modesty.*
 Vērītās, vēritātīs, f. *Truth, verity.*
 Vērūs, ā, ūm. *True, real.*
 Vērum, i, n. *Truth.*
 Vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm. *Your.*
 Vestiō, irē, ivī, itūm. *To clothe.*
 Viā, ae, f. *Way, road.*
 Victōr, victōris, m. *Victor, conqueror.*
 Victōriā, ae, f. *Victory.*
 Victōriā, ae, f. *Victoria, Queen of England.*
 Vigīlō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To watch, be awake.*
 Vīlis, ē. *Cheap.*
 Vindex, vindicīs, m. and f. *Vindictor, avenger.*
 Viōlō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To violate.*
 Vīr, vīri, m. *Man, hero, soldier.*
 Virgō, virgīnīs, f. *Maiden, girl.*
 Virtūs, virtūtīs, f. *Valor, virtue.*
 Vitā, ae, f. *Life.*
 Vitium, ii, n. *Fault, vice.*
 Vitūpērō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To find fault with, censure, blame.*
 Vivō, vivērē, vixī, victūm. *To live, reside.*
 Vōcō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To call.*
 Vōlō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To fly.*
 Vōluntāriūs, ā, ūm. *Voluntary.*
 Vōluptās, vōluptātīs, f. *Pleasure.*
 Vox, vōcīs, f. *Voice.*
 Vulnērō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To wound.*
 Vulnūs, vulnērīs, n. *Wound.*
 Vultūr, vultūrīs, m. *Vulture.*
 Vultūs, ūs, m. *Countenance.*

X.

Xerxēs, is, m. *Xerxes, a Persian king.*

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

A, an. *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article. See p. 12, note 1.*

Acceptable. *Grātūs, ā, ūm.*

Admonish. *Admōnē, admōnērē, admōnui, admōnūtūm.*

Adorned. *Ornatūs, ā, ūm.*

Advise. *Mōnē, mōnērē, mōnui, mōnūtūm.*

After. *Post, prep. with acc.*

Against. *Contrā, prep. with acc.*

Sometimes denoted by the Dative.

Alexander. *Alexandēr, Alexandri, m.*

All. *Omnis, ē.*

Always. *Sempēr, adv.*

Announce. *Nuntiō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*

Appoint. *Creō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*

Army. *Exercitūs, ūs, m.*

Arrival. *Adventūs, ūs, m.*

At. *Denoted by the Ablative of Place, or of Time. See 421 and 426.*

Athenian. *Athēniensis, ē.*

Athenian, an Athenian. *Athēniensis, is, m. and f.*

Athens. *Athēnāe, ārum, f. plur.*

Attack. *Impetūs, ūs, m.*

Await. *Expectō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*

B.

Battle. *Proeliūm, ū, n.*

Battle-array. *Acies, ēi, f.*

Be. *Sūm, esse, fui.*

Be silent. *Taceō, tacēre, tacui, tacitūm.*

Beautiful. *Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm.*

Before. *Antē, prep. with acc.*

Bird. *Avīs, ūvis, f.*

Birth-day. *Nātālis diēs, m.*

Blame. *Vitūperō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*

Book. *Liber, librī, m.*

Boy. *Puer, puērī, m.*

Brave. *Fortis, ē.*

Bravely. *Fortiter, adv.*

Bravery. *Virtūs, virtutis, f.*

Bring to a close. *Finio, ire, iei, itūm.*

Brother. *Frāter, frātris, m.*

Brutus. *Brūtus, i, m.*

By. *A, ab, prep. with abl. Often denoted by the Ablative alone. See 414.*

C.

Caius. *Cāiūs, ū, m.*

Call. *Vocō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*

Camillus. *Cāmillūs, i, m.*

Campanian, of Campania. *Campānūs, ā, ūm.*

Carthage. *Carthāgō, Carthāgēnis, f.*

Carthaginian. *Carthāgīniensis, ē.*

Carthaginian, a Carthaginian. *Carthāgīniensis, is, m. and f.*

Cato. *Cātō, Cātōnis, m.*

Cicero. *Cicērō, Cicērōnis, m.*

Citizen. *Civis, civis, m. and f.*
 City. *Urbs, urbis, f.*
 Cloud. *Nubēs, nubis, f.*
 Commander. *Imperātor, imperātoris, m.*

Concerning. *Dē, prep. with abl.*
 Consul. *Consul, consulis, m.*
 Contrary to. *Contrā, prep. with acc.*

Conversation. *Sermō, sermonis, m.*
 Corinth. *Cōrinthūs, i, f.*
 Corinthian. *Cōrinthiūs, ā, ūm.*
 Corinthian, a Corinthian. *Cōrinthiūs, ī, m.*

Cornelius. *Cornēlius, ī, m.*
 Correct. *Corrigō, corrigere, correcti, correctum.*

Country. *Patriā, ae, f.*
 Courage. *Virtūs, virtutis, f.*
 Crown. *Cōronā, ae, f.*

D.

Daily. *Quotidianus, ā, ūm.*
 Daughter. *Filiā, ae, f.*
 Day. *Diēs, diē, m.* See 120, note.
 Dear. *Cārus, ā, ūm.*

Declare. *Indicō, indicere, indixi, indictum.*

Delight. *Dilectō, are, avi, atum.*
 Desirous of. *Cupidus, ā, ūm; avidus, ā, ūm.*

Did. *Often the sign of the Imperfect, or of the Perfect tense, especially in questions.*

Diligence. *Diligentiā, ae, f.*
 Diligent. *Diligens, diligentis.*
 Do. *Often the sign of the Present tense, especially in questions.*

E.

Eight. *Octō.* See 176.
 Eighth. *Octāvus, ā, ūm.*
 Enemy. *Hostis, hostis, m. and f.*

Exercise. *Exerco, exercere, exercui, exercitum.*

Exile. *Exsul, exsulis, m. and f.*
 Expect. *Exspectō, are, avi, atum.*

F.

Father. *Pater, patris, m.*
 Father-in-law. *Socr, socri, m.*

Fertile. *Fertilis, e.*
 Fidelity. *Fides, fidei, f.*

Field. *Agri, agri, m.*
 Fifth. *Quintus, ū, ūm.*

Fifty. *Quinquaginta.* See 176.
 Fight. *Pugnō, are, avi, atum.*

Finish. *Finio, ire, ivi, itum.*
 Five. *Quinquē.* See 176.

Flee. *Fugio, fugere, fugi, fugitum.*
 Flower. *Flos, floris, m.*

Fly. *Volo, are, avi, atum.*
 Foot. *Pes, pedis, m.*

Fond of. *Amans, amantis.*
 For. *Pro, prep. with abl.* In the sense of *because of*, it is denoted by the Ablative alone (414); and in the sense of *for the benefit of*, by the Dative (384).

Fortify. *Munio, ire, ivi, itum.*
 Four. *Quattuor.* See 176.

Fourth. *Quartus, ā, ūm.*
 Friend. *Amicus, i, m.*

Friendship. *Amicitia, ae, f.*
 From. *A, ab, prep. with abl.*

Fruit. *Fructus, us, m.*

G.

Garden. *Hortus, i, m.*
 Gaul. *Gallus, i, m.*

Gem. *Gemma, ae, f.*
 General. *Dux, ducis, m. and f.*

Gift. *Donum, i, n.*
 Glory. *Gloria, ae, f.*

Gold. *Aurum, i, n.*
 Golden. *Aureus, ā, ūm.*

Good. *Bōnus, ā, ūm.*
 Goodness. *Bōnitās, bōnitātis, f.*
 Govern. *Rēgō, rēgērē, rexī, rectum.*
 Great. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*
 Greece. *Graeciā, ae, f.*
 Grove. *Lūcus, ī, m.*
 Guard. *Custodiō, irē, iui, iūm.*

H.

Had. Often the sign of the Pluperfect tense.

Hannibal. *Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, m.*
 Happy. *Beātūs, ā, ūm.*

Have. *Habēō, habērē, habui, habūtum.*

Sometimes simply the sign of the Perfect tense; as, we have loved.

He, she, it. *Is, ea, id; illē, illā, illud.* The pronoun is often implied in the ending of the verb.

He himself. *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsum.*

Hear. *Audiō, irē, iui, iūm.*

High. *Altūs, altā, altum.*

Himself. *Sui* (184); *ipsē, ipsā, ipsum.*

His. *Suūs, ā, ūm.*

Hope (verb). *Spērō, arē, aui, aūm.*

Hope (noun). *Spēs, spēi, f.*

Hour. *Hōrā, ae, f.*

Hundred. *Centum.* See 176.

I.

I. *Egō, mei.* See 184.

In. *In,* prep. with abl.

In behalf of. *Prō,* prep. with abl.

Instruct. *Erudiō, irē, iui, iūm.*

Instructor. *Praeceptōr, praeceptōris, m.*

Into. *In,* prep. with acc.

Invite. *Invitō, arē, aui, aūm.*

Iron. *Ferrum, ī, n.*

Island. *Insulā, ae, f.*

It. See *he, she, it.*

Italy. *Italiā, ae, f.*

J.

Judge. *Iudex, iudicis, m. and f.*

Justice. *Iustitiā, ae, f.*

K.

Keep one's word. *Fidēi servārē.*

See p. 74, note 4.

Kindly. *Bēignē, adv.*

King. *Rex, regis, m.*

Knowledge. *Scientiā, ae, f.*

L.

Large. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*

Latinus. *Lātinus, ī, m.*

Lavinia. *Lāviniā, ae, f.*

Law. *Lex, legis, f.*

Lead. *Ducō, ducērē, duxi, ductum.*

Lead back. *Rēducō, rēducērē, rēduxī, rēductum.*

Lead forth. *Educō, educērē, eduxī, eductum.*

Let. *Render by the Subjunctive.* See 196, I., 2.

Leader. *Dux, dūcis, m. and f.*

Letter. *Epistolā, ae, f.*

Liberate. *Liberō, arē, aui, aūm.*

Life. *Vitā, ae, f.*

Like. *Similis, ē.*

Love. *Amō, arē, aui, aūm.*

M.

Macedonia. *Macedōniā, ae, f.*

Man. *Hōmō, hōmīnis, m. Vir, viri, m.* The latter is used as a term of respect; a true or worthy man, a hero.

Many. *Multū, ae, ā, plur.*

May. A sign of the Present Subjunctive.

May have. A sign of the Perfect Subjunctive.

Me. See I.

Memory. *Mēmōriā, ae, f.*

Might, would, should. *Signs of the Imperfect Subjunctive.*

Might have, would have, should have. *Signs of the Pluperfect Subjunctive.*

Mind. *Animās, i, m.*

Moat. *Fossā, ae, f.*

Money. *Pecūniā, ae, f.*

Month. *Mensis, mensis, m.*

More. *Sign of the Comparative degree.* See 160.

Most. *Sign of the Superlative degree.* See 160.

Mound. *Aggēr, aggēris, m.*

Mountain. *Mons, montis, m.*

Much. *Multū, adv.*

My. *Meūs, ā, ūm.* See 185.

N.

Name. *Nōmēn, nōmīnis, n.*

Nightingale. *Luscīniā, ae, f.*

Noble. *Nōbīlis, ē.*

Not. *Nōn, adv.* Interrogative, *nonnē.*

O.

Obey. *Pārē, pārērē, pārui, pārtūm.*

Observe. *Servē, arē, avi, atūm.*

Occupy. *Occūpō, arē, avi, atūm.*

Of. *Denoted by the Genitive.* See 393.

Of itself. *Pēr sē.*

On. *Often denoted by the Ablative of Time.* See 426.

One. *Unūs, ā, ūm.* See 175.

Oration. *Orātiō, orātiōnis, f.*

Orator. *Orātōr, orātōris, m.*

Our. *Nostēr, trā, trūm.*

P.

Parent. *Pārens, pārentis, m. and f.*

Philip. *Philippūs, i, m.*

Pisistratus. *Pisistrātūs, i, m.*

Please. *Plācē, plācērē, plācui, plācūtūm.*

Pleasing. *Grātūs, ā, ūm.*

Pleasure. *Vōluptās, vōluptātis, f.*

Plough. *Arē, arārē, arāvī, arātūm.*

Plunder (verb). *Spōliō, arē, avi, atūm.*

Practise. *Exerceō, exercērē, exercui, exercūtūm; cōlō, cōlērē, cōlui, cultūm.*

Praise (verb). *Laudō, arē, avi, atūm.*

Praise (noun). *Laus, laudis, f.*

Precept. *Praeceptū, i, n.*

Predict. *Praedīcō, praedīcērē, praedixi, praedictūm.*

Present (noun). *Dōnū, i, n.*

Publius. *Publiūs, ū, m.*

Punish. *Pūniō, irē, iui, itūm.*

Pupil. *Discipulūs, i, m.*

Put to flight. *Fūgō, arē, avi, atūm.*

Q.

Queen. *Rēgīnā, ae, f.*

R.

Receive. *Accipīō, accipērē, accēpi, acceptūm.*

Reign, royal authority. *Regnū, i, n.*

Renowned. *Clārūs, ā, ūm.*

Reside. *Habītō, arē, avi, atūm.*

Rhine. *Rhēnūs, i, m.*

River. *Amnīs, amnis, m.*

Roman. *Rōmānūs, ā, ūm.*

Roman, a Roman. *Rōmānūs, i, m.*

Rome. *Rōma, ae, f.*

Romulus. *Rōmūlūs, i, m.*

Rule. *Rēgō, rēgērē, rexī, rectūm.*

S.

Safety. *Sālūs, sālūtis, f.*

Same. *Idēm, eādēm, idēm.* See 186.

Say. *Dicō, dicērē, dixi, dictūm.*

Save. *Servō, arē, avi, atum.*
 Scipio. *Scipiō, Scipionis, m.*
 Senator. *Sēnātor, sēnātoris, m.*
 Serve. *Serviō, irē, ivi, itum.*
 Servius. *Servius, i, m.*
 Setting. *Occāsūs, ūs, m.*
 Shall, will. *Signs of the Future tense.*
 Shall have, will have. *Signs of the Future Perfect tense.*
 Shepherd. *Pastor, pastoris, m.*
 Should, should have. See *might, might have.*
 Show. *Monstrō, arē, avi, atum.*
 Sicily. *Siciliā, ae, f.*
 Silent. See *be silent.*
 Silver. *Argentum, i, n.*
 Sing. *Cantō, arē, avi, atum.*
 Singing, a song. *Cantūs, ūs, m.*
 Six. *Sex.* See 176.
 Slave. *Servus, i, m.*
 Sleep. *Dormiō, irē, ivi, itum.*
 Soldier. *Miles, militis, m.*
 Somebody, some one. *Aliquis, aliquis, or aliquod.* See 191.
 Son. *Filius, i, m.*
 Son-in-law. *Gēnēr, gēnērī, m.*
 Song. *Carmen, carminis, n.*
 Speak. *Dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum.*
 State. *Civitas, civitatis, f.*
 Strengthen. *Firmō, arē, avi, atum.*
 Sun. *Sol, solis, m.*
 Sunset. *Occāsūs solis.*
 Sword. *Gladius, i, m.*

T.

Take. *Capiō, capere, cepi, captum.*
 Take by storm. *Expugnō, arē, avi, atum.*
 Tarquin. *Tarquinius, i, m.*
 Tell. *Dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum.*
 Temple. *Templum, i, n.*

Ten. *Decem.* See 176.
 Terrify. *Terreō, terrere, terrui, territum.*
 Than. *Quam.* Often omitted, in which case the Ablative follows. See 417.
 That. *Ille, illa, illud.* See 186.
 The. *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article.* See p. 12, note 1.
 Their. *Suis, a, um.*
 Then. *Tum, adv.*
 Thing. *Rēs, rei, f.*
 This. *Hic, haec, hoc.* See 186.
 Three. *Trēs, tria.* See 175.
 Time. *Tempus, temporis, n.*
 To. *Ad, in, preps. with acc.* To is sometimes denoted by the Accusative, and sometimes by the Dative. See 379 and 384
 True. *Verus, a, um.*
 Truth. *Verum, i, n.*
 Tullia. *Tullia, ae, f.*
 Two. *Duos, duae, duo.* See 175.
 Tyrant. *Tyrannus, i, m.*

U.

Use. *Usus, ūs, m.*
 Useful. *Utilis, e.*

V.

Valor. *Virtus, virtutis, f.*
 Valuable. *Prætiōsus, a, um.*
 Very. *Sometimes the sign of the Superlative.* See 160.
 Victoria. *Victoriā, ae, f.*
 Victory. *Victoriā, ae, f.*
 Violate. *Viō, arē, avi, atum.*
 Virtue. *Virtus, virtutis, f.*

W.

Walk. *Ambulō, arē, avi, atum.*
 War. *Bellum, i, n.*

Way. *Via*, ae, f.

Well. *Bene*, adv.

Who, which (relative). *Qui*, *quae*, *quod*. See 187.

Who, which, what (interrogative)?

Quis, *quae*, *quid*? *quā*, *quae*, *quod*?

See 188.

Wide. *Lātus*, ā, ūm.

Wife. *Conjux*, *conjugis*, f.

Will, will have. See *shall*, *shall have*.

Winter. *Hiems*, *hiemis*, f.

Wisdom. *Sapientia*, ae, f.

Wise. *Sapiens*, *sapientis*.

With. *Cum*, prep. with abl. Often denoted by the Ablative alone.

See 414.

Word. *Verbum*, i, n. To keep one's word, *fidem servare*. See p. 74, note 4.

Would, would have. See *might*, *might have*.

Wound. *Vulnĕrĕ*, āre, āvĭ, ātĭm.

Write. *Scrībĕ*, *scrībĕrĕ*, *scripsĭ*, *scriptum*.

Y.

Year. *Annus*, i, m.

You. *Tū*, tui. See 184.

Your. *Tuus*, ā, ūm; *vestĕr*, *vestrā*, *vestrūm*.

Yourself. *Tū*, *tū ipse*.

D. Appleton & Co.'s School and College Text-Books.

HARKNESS'S SERIES OF LATIN TEXT-BOOKS.

I.	
First Latin Book. 12mo.....	\$1 30
II.	
Second Latin Book and Reader. 12mo, 262 pages, 1	10
III.	
Introductory Latin Book. 12mo.....	1 10
IV.	
Latin Reader. 12mo.....	1 10
V.	
New Latin Reader.....	1 10
VI.	
Latin Reader. With Exercises. 1 vol., 12mo.....	1 30
VII.	
Elementary Latin Grammar. 12mo.....	1 10
VIII.	
New Latin Grammar. Revised edition. Embracing Important Results of Recent Philological Research. 12mo...	1 30
IX.	
Introduction to Latin Prose Composition....	1 30
X.	
Cæsar's Commentaries. 12mo.....	1 30
XI.	
Cicero. 12mo.....	1 30
XII.	
Cicero. 12mo. With Dictionary.....	1 50

THIS series has received the unqualified commendation of many of the most eminent classical professors and teachers in our country, and is already in use in every State in the Union, and, indeed, in nearly all our leading classical institutions of every grade, both of school and college. Each volume has been received with a degree of enthusiasm unsurpassed in our experience with text-books. We ask the attention of teachers to these works, in the conviction that they furnish a better course of elementary classical instruction than can elsewhere be found in our language.

D. APPLETON & CO., 549 & 551 Broadway, New York.

Harkness's Elements of Latin Grammar.

This work is intended especially for those who do not contemplate a collegiate course, but it may be successfully used in any school where, for special reasons, a small grammar is deemed desirable. The beginner needs to store his mind at the outset with the laws of the language in such forms of statement as he can carry with him throughout his whole course of study. The convenience and interest of the student in this regard have been carefully consulted in the preparation of this manual. All the paradigms, rules, and discussions, have been introduced in the exact language of the author's Grammar, by which it may at any time be supplemented. While, therefore, in many schools this work will be found a sufficient Latin Grammar, it may be used in others, either as preparatory to the larger Grammar, or in connection with it.

No separate references to this volume will ever be needed in editions of Latin authors, as the numbering of the articles is the same as in the larger Grammar.

From Pres. COBLEIGH, *Tennessee Wesleyan University.*

"This work is very timely. I regard it as indispensable in many schools in the South."

From Prof. W. H. YOUNG, *Ohio University.*

"I most heartily commend this work. I have for some time felt its need. It seems to make your Latin course complete."

From Prof. C. G. HUDSON, *Genesee Wesleyan Seminary, Lima, N. Y.*

"I can heartily recommend it. I think that it is superior to all rivals."

From Prof. H. D. WALKER, *Orangeville Academy, Pa.*

"In my opinion, no work of Professor Harkness will be more widely used, or more valuable, than this. It supplies a want long felt by teachers. It is clear, thorough, and sufficiently extended for ordinary students."

From Prof. S. H. MANLEY, *Cornell College, Iowa.*

"I think it one of the finest compendiums of Grammar I have ever seen. It must prove of great service as a preparatory drill-book."

From Prof. L. F. PARKER, *Iowa College.*

"I feel under personal obligation for this new incentive and aid to classical study."

From H. F. LANE, *High School, Templeton, Mass.*

"It is *exactly* adapted to our wants. We use all of Harkness's books—Grammar, Reader, and Composition. We consider them emphatically 'the best.'"

From Prof. J. A. KELLER, *Heidelberg College, Ohio.*

"I was surprised to find so full an outline of Latin Grammar comprised within such narrow limits."

From Prof. M. B. BROWN, *Notre-Dame University.*

"In my opinion, it is just the book which has long been needed. It is a book to be learned *entire*, and is complete as far as it goes. Prof. Harkness deserves the thanks both of students and teachers."

From Rev. B. G. NORTHEOP, *Secretary of Board of Education, Conn.*

"I am highly pleased with Harkness's Elements of Latin Grammar. Its brevity commends it for beginners and for all contemplating a partial Latin course of study."

Arnold's First Latin Book ;

Remodelled and Rewritten, and adapted to the Ollendorff Method of Instruction. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A. M. 12mo, 302 pages.

Under the labors of the present author, the work of Arnold has undergone radical changes. It has been adapted to the Ollendorff improved method of instruction, and is superior to the former work in its plan and all the details of instruction. While it proceeds in common with Arnold on the principle of imitation and repetition, it pursues much more exactly and with a surer step the progressive method, and aims to make the pupil master of every individual subject before he proceeds to a new one, and of each subject by itself before it is combined with others ; so that he is brought gradually and surely to understand the most difficult combinations of the language. An important feature of this book is, that it carries along the Syntax *pari passu* with the Etymology, so that the student is not only all the while becoming familiar with the forms of the language, but is also learning to construct sentences and to understand the mutual relations of their component parts.

Special care has been taken in the exercises to present such idioms and expressions alone as are authorized by the best classic authors, so that the learner may acquire by example as well as precept, a distinct idea of pure Latinity.

It has been a leading object with the author so to classify and arrange the various topics as to simplify the subject, and, as far as possible, to remove the disheartening difficulties too often encountered at the outset in the study of an ancient language.

From W. E. TOLMAN, Instructor in Providence High School.

"I have used Arnold's First Latin Book, remodelled and rewritten by Mr. Harkness, in my classes during the past year, and find it to be a work not so much remodelled and rewritten as one *entirely new*, both in its plan and in its adaptation to the wants of the beginner in Latin."

From WM. RUSSELL, Editor of the First Series of the Boston Journal of Education.

"The form which this work has taken under the skillful hand of Mr. H. is marked throughout by a method purely elementary, perfectly simple, gradually progressive, and rigorously exact. Pupils trained on such a manual cannot fail of becoming distinguished, in their subsequent progress, for precision and correctness of knowledge, and for rapid advancement in genuine scholarship."

From GEORGE CAPRON, Principal of Worcester High School.

"I have examined the work with care, and am happy to say that I find it superior to any similar work with which I am acquainted. I shall recommend it to my next class."

From J. B. BOISE, Professor of Ancient Languages in Michigan University.

"I have examined your First Book in Latin, and am exceedingly pleased both with the plan and execution. I shall not fail to use my influence toward introducing it into the classical schools of this State."

Second Latin Book.

Comprising an Historical Latin Reader, with Notes and Rules for Translating, and an Exercise Book, developing a Complete Analytical Syntax, in a series of Lessons and Exercises, involving the Construction, Analysis, and Reconstruction of Latin Sentences. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A.M., Senior Master in the Providence High School. 12mo, 362 pages.

This work is designed as a sequel to the author's "First Latin Book." It comprises a complete analytical syntax, exhibiting the essential structure of the Latin language, from its simplest to its most expanded and elaborate form.

The arrangement of the lessons is decidedly philosophical, gradually progressive, and in strict accordance with the law of development of the human mind. Every new principle is stated in simple, clear, and accurate language, and illustrated by examples carefully selected from the reading lessons, which the student is required to translate, analyze, and reconstruct. He is also exercised in forming new Latin sentences on given models. This, while it gives variety and interest to what would otherwise be in the highest degree monotonous, completely fixes in the mind the subject of the lesson, both by analysis and synthesis.

The careful study of this volume, on the plan recommended by the author, will greatly facilitate the pupil's progress in the higher departments of the language. Such is the testimony of the numerous institutions in which Harkness's improved edition of Arnold has been introduced.

From J. A. SPOENCER, D. D., late Professor of Latin in Burlington College, N. J.

"The present volume appears to me to carry out excellently the system on which the late lamented Arnold based his educational works; and in the Selections for Reading, the Notes and Rules for Translating, the Exercises in Translating into Latin, the Analyses, etc., I think it admirably adapted to advance the diligent student, not only rapidly, but soundly, in an acquaintance with the Latin language."

From PROF. GAMMELL, of Brown University.

"The book seems to me, as I anticipated it would be, a valuable addition to the works now in use among teachers of Latin in the schools of the United States, and for many of them it will undoubtedly form an advantageous substitute."

From PROF. LINCOLN, of Brown University.

"It seems to me to carry on most successfully the method pursued in the First Book. Though brief, it is very comprehensive, and combines judicious and skillfully-formed exercises with systematic instruction."

From J. J. OWEN, D. D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy, New York.

"This Second Latin Book gives abundant evidence of the author's learning and tact to arrange, simplify, and make accessible to the youthful mind the great and fundamental principles of the Latin language. The book is worthy of a place in every classical school, and I trust will have an extensive sale."

From PROF. ANDERSON, of Lewisburg University, Pennsylvania.

"A faithful use of the work would diminish the drudgery of the student's earlier studies, and facilitate his progress in his subsequent course. I wish the work a wide circulation."

Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War.

With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory; a Lexicon, Geographical and Historical Indexes, a Map of Gaul, etc. By Rev. J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo, 408 pages.

In the preparation of this volume, great care has been taken to adapt it in every respect to the wants of the young student, to make it a means at the same time of advancing him in a thorough knowledge of Latin, and inspiring him with a desire for further acquaintance with the classics of the language. Dr. Spencer has not, like some commentators, given an abundance of help on the easy passages, and allowed the difficult ones to speak for themselves. His Notes are on those parts on which the pupil wants them, and explain, not only grammatical difficulties, but allusions of every kind in the text. A well-drawn sketch of Cæsar's life, a Map of the region in which his campaigns were carried on, and a Vocabulary, which removes the necessity of using a large dictionary and the waste of time consequent thereon, enhance the value of the volume in no small degree.

Quintus Curtius :

Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and illustrated with English Notes. By WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo, 385 pages.

Curtius's History of Alexander the Great, though little used in the schools of this country, in England and on the Continent holds a high place in the estimation of classical instructors. The interesting character of its subject, the elegance of its style, and the purity of its moral sentiments, ought to place it at least on a par with Cæsar's Commentaries or Sallust's Histories. The present edition, by the late Professor of Latin in Rutgers College, is unexceptionable in typography, convenient in form, scholarly and practical in its notes, and altogether an admirable text-book for classes preparing for college.

From PROF. OWEN, of the New York Free Academy.

"It gives me great pleasure to add my testimonial to the many you are receiving in favor of the beautiful and well-edited edition of Quintus Curtius, by Prof. Wm. Henry Crosby. It is seldom that a classical book is submitted to me for examination, to which I can give so hearty a recommendation as to this. The external appearance is attractive; the paper, type, and binding, being just what a text-book should be, neat, clear, and durable. The notes are brief, pertinent, scholar-like, neither too exuberant nor too meagre, but happily exemplifying the golden mean so desirable and yet so very difficult of attainment."

Select Orations of M. Tullius Cicero :

With Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in the University of New York. 12mo, 459 pages.

This edition of Cicero's Select Orations possesses some special advantages for the student which are both new and important. It is the only edition which contains the improved text that has been prepared by a recent careful collation and correct deciphering of the best manuscripts of Cicero's writings. It is the work of the celebrated Orelli, Madvig, and Klotz, and has been done since the appearance of Orelli's complete edition. The Notes, by Professor Johnson, of the New York University, have been mostly selected, with great care, from the best German authors, as well as the English edition of Arnold.

From THOMAS CHASE, Tutor in Latin in Harvard University.

"An edition of Cicero like Johnson's has long been wanted; and the excellence of the text, the illustrations of words, particles, and pronouns, and the explanation of various points of construction and interpretation, bear witness to the Editor's familiarity with some of the most important results of modern scholarship, and entitle his work to a large share of public favor."

"It seems to us an improvement upon any edition of these Orations that has been published in this country, and will be found a valuable aid in their studies to the lovers of classical literature."—*Troy Daily Whig*.

Cicero de Officiis :

With English Notes, mostly translated from ZUMPT and BONNELL. By THOMAS A. THACHER, of Yale College. 12mo, 194 pages.

In this edition, a few historical notes have been introduced in cases where the Dictionary in common use has not been found to contain the desired information; the design of which is to aid the learner in understanding the contents of the treatises, the thoughts and reasoning of the author, to explain grammatical difficulties, and inculcate a knowledge of grammatical principles. The Editor has aimed throughout to guide rather than carry the learner through difficulties; requiring of him more study, in consequence of his help, than he would have devoted to the book without it.

From M. L. STOEVEY, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Pennsylvania College.

"I have examined with much pleasure Prof. Thacher's edition of Cicero de Officiis, and am convinced of its excellence. The Notes have been prepared with great care and good judgment. Practical knowledge of the wants of the student has enabled the Editor to furnish just the kind of assistance required; grammatical difficulties are removed, and the obscurities of the treatise are explained, the interest of the learner is elicited, and his industry directed rather than superseded. There can be but one opinion with regard to the merits of the work, and I trust that Professor Thacher will be disposed to continue his labors so carefully commenced, in this department of classical learning."

The Works of Horace.

With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. I. LINCOLN, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo, 575 pages.

The text of this edition is mainly that of Orelli, the most important readings of other critics being given in foot-notes. The volume is introduced with a biographical sketch of Horace and a critique on his writings, which enable the student to enter intelligently on his work. Peculiar grammatical constructions, as well as geographical and historical allusions, are explained in notes, which are just full enough to aid the pupil, to excite him to gain a thorough understanding of the author, and awaken in him a taste for philological studies, without taking all labor off his hands. While the chief aim has been to impart a clear idea of Latin Syntax as exhibited in the text, it has also been a cherished object to take advantage of the means so variously and richly furnished by Horace for promoting the poetical taste and literary culture of the student.

From an article by PROF. BAHR, of the University of Heidelberg, in the Heidelberg Annals of Literature.

"There are already several American editions of Horace, intended for the use of schools; of one of these, which has passed through many editions, and has also been widely circulated in England, mention has been formerly made in this journal; but that one we may not put upon an equality with the one now before us, inasmuch as this has taken a different stand-point, which may serve as a sign of progress in this department of study. The editor has, it is true, also intended his work for the use of schools, and has sought to adapt it, in all its parts, to such a use; but still, without losing sight of this purpose, he has proceeded throughout with more independence. In the preparation of the Notes, the editor has faithfully observed the principles (laid down in his preface); the explanations of the poet's words commend themselves by a compressed brevity which limits itself to what is most essential, and by a sharp precision of expression; and references to other passages of the poet, and also to grammars, dictionaries, etc., are not wanting."

Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline.

With Notes and a Vocabulary. By NOBLE BUTLER and MINARD STURGIS. 12mo, 397 pages.

The editors have spent a vast amount of time and labor in correcting the text, by a comparison of the most improved German and English editions. It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition hitherto published in this country. In accordance with their chronological order, the "Jugurtha" precedes the "Catiline." The Notes are copious and tersely expressed; they display not only fine scholarship, but (what is quite as necessary in such a book) a practical knowledge of the difficulties which the student encounters in reading this author, and the aids that he requires. The Vocabulary was prepared by the late WILLIAM H. G. BUTLER. It will be found an able and faithful performance.

Germania and Agricola of Caius Cornelius Tacitus :

With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of the Greek and Latin Languages in Amherst College. 12mo, 198 pages.

Tacitus's account of Germany and life of Agricola are among the most fascinating and instructive Latin classics. The present edition has been prepared expressly for college classes, by one who knows what they need. In it will be found: 1. A Latin text, approved by all the more recent editors. 2. A copious illustration of the grammatical constructions, as well as of the rhetorical and poetical usages peculiar to Tacitus. In a writer so concise it has been deemed necessary to pay particular regard to the connection of thought, and to the particles as the hinges of that connection. 3. Constant comparisons of the writer with the authors of the Augustan age, for the purpose of indicating the changes which had already been wrought in the language of the Roman people. 4. An embodiment in small compass of the most valuable labors of such recent German critics as Grimm, Günther, Gruber, Kießling, Dronke, Roth, Ruperti, and Walther.

From PROF. LINCOLN, of Brown University.

"I have found the book in daily use with my class of very great service, very practical, and well suited to the wants of students. I am very much pleased with the life of Tacitus and the Introduction, and indeed with the literary character of the book throughout. We shall make the book a part of our Latin course."

The History of Tacitus :

By W. S. TYLER. With Notes for Colleges. 12mo, 453 pages.

The text of Tacitus is here presented in a form as correct as a comparison of the best editions can make it. Notes are appended for the student's use, which contain not only the grammatical, but likewise all the geographical, archaeological, and historical illustrations that are necessary to render the author intelligible. It has been the constant aim of the editor to carry students beyond the dry details of grammar and lexicography, and introduce them to a familiar acquaintance and lively sympathy with the author and his times. Indexes to the notes, and to the names of persons and places, render reference easy.

From PROF. HACKETT, of Newton Theological Seminary.

"The notes appear to me to be even more neat and elegant than those on the 'Germania and Agricola.' They come as near to such notes as I would be glad to write myself on a classic, as almost any thing that I have yet seen."

make the minutes
+ 7 minutes

agree with the subject
in mind & per 8

Mr. Sing - 22

Mr. Sing - 22
G. Williams - 22
L. Williams - 22
A. Williams - 22
V. Williams - 22
W. Williams - 22

Mr. Sing - 22
G. Williams - 22
L. Williams - 22
A. Williams - 22
V. Williams - 22
W. Williams - 22
M. Williams - 22

Mr. Sing - 22
G. Williams - 22
L. Williams - 22
A. Williams - 22
V. Williams - 22
W. Williams - 22
M. Williams - 22
J. Williams - 22

Indo-European languages
or before it in the
mentioned Indo-European
Indo-European.

- 1st Person speaking
- 2nd " speaking to
- 3rd " speaking of

1. The direct object of
a verb is put in the
Acc. (Case)

2. The indirect object is (the
person or thing to whom or for whom
the action is done)

And the object of the
3. The object of the preposition

acc.

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

- Arnold's Greek Reading Book**, containing the Substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Construing and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, copious Selections from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes, and a Lexicon. 12mo. 618 pages.
- Boise's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition**. Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES R. BOISE, Prof. of Greek in University of Michigan. 12mo. 185 pages.
- Champlin's Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar**. By J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo. 206 pages.
- First Lessons in Greek**; * or, the Beginner's Companion-Book to Hadley's Grammar. By JAMES MORRIS WHITON, Rector of Hopkins's Grammar School, New Haven, Ct. 12mo.
- Hadley's Greek Grammar**,* for Schools and Colleges. By JAMES HADLEY, Professor in Yale College. 12mo. 366 pages.
- **Elements of the Greek Grammar**. 12mo.
- Herodotus, Selections from**; comprising mainly such portions as give a Connected History of the East, to the Fall of Babylon and the Death of Cyrus the Great. By HERMAN M. JOHNSON, D. D., 12mo. 185 pages.
- Homer's Iliad**, according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes, by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy of the City of New York. 1 vol., 12mo. 759 pages.
- **Odyssey**, according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Sixteenth Edition. 12mo.
- Kuhner's Greek Grammar**. Translated by Professors EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Large 12mo. 620 pages.
- Kendrick's Greek Ollendorff**,* Being a Progressive Exhibition of the Principles of the Greek Grammar. By ASAHEL C. KENDRICK, Prof. of Greek Language in the University of Rochester. 12mo. 371 pages.
- Owen's Xenophon's Anabasis**. A new and enlarged edition, with numerous references to Kuhner's, Crosby's, and Hadley's Grammars. 12mo.
- **Homer's Iliad**. 12mo. 759 pages.
- **Greek Reader**. 12mo.
- **Acts of the Apostles**, in Greek, with a Lexicon. 12mo.
- **Homer's Odyssey**. Tenth Edition. 12mo.
- **Thucydides**. With Map. 12mo. 700 pages.
- **Xenophon's Cyropaedia**. Eighth Edition. 12mo.
- Plato's Apology and Crito**,* With Notes by W. S. TILLEY, Graves Professor of Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 180 pp.

na
1.25

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

Thucydides's History of the Peloponnesian War, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. With Map. 12mo.

Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates. With Notes and Introduction by R. D. C. ROBBINS, Professor of Language in Middlebury College. 12mo. 421 pages.

Anabasis. With Explanatory Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By JAMES R. BOISE, Professor of Greek in the University of Michigan. 12mo. 398 pages.

Anabasis. Chiefly according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Revised Edition. With Map. 12mo.

Cyropædia, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. 12mo.

Sophocles's *Edipus Tyrannus*. With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By HOWARD CROSBY, Professor of Greek in the University of New York. 12mo. 188 pages.

HEBREW AND SYRIAC.

Gesenius's Hebrew Grammar. Seventeenth Edition, with Corrections and Additions, by Dr. E. RODIGER. Translated by T. J. CONANT, Professor of Hebrew in Rochester Theological Seminary, New York. 8vo. 361 pages.

Uhlemann's Syriac Grammar. Translated from the German. By ENOCH HUTCHINSON. With a Course of Exercises in Syriac Grammar, and a Creatomathy and brief Lexicon prepared by the Translator. 8vo. 367 pages.

D. APPLETON & CO., 549 & 551 BROADWAY, N. Y.,

PUBLISHED UPWARD OF

300 SCHOOL TEXT-BOOKS,

Including the Departments of English, Latin, Greek, French, Spanish, Italian, Hebrew, and Syriac; of which a complete

DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE

Will be sent, free of postage, to those applying for it.

A single copy for *examination*, of any of the works marked thus *, will be transmitted by mail, postage prepaid, to any Teacher remitting one-half of its price. Any of the others will be sent by mail, *postage prepaid*, upon receipt of full retail price.

